# TAKI MO TE FAUGA O NA FALE

# **Tokelau Building Code**

Published under the authority of the Council for the Ongoing Government of Tokelau

May 2008

Printed by Geon PO Box 162 Palmerston North New Zealand

# CONTENTS

	Volume 1
Foreword	5
Tulafono o na Taki Fau Fale 2007 Building Rules 2007 <b>Schedule</b>	6
Commentary on the Building Code Building Code Home Building Manual	PURPLE ORANGE Volume 2

# Taki mo te Fauga o na Fale

# FOREWORD

The Tokelau Building Rules provide a Building Code and minimum building standards for buildings in Tokelau.

The Rules and the Code should be applied in conjunction with the Health Rules 2003 and the Electricity, Gas and Dangerous Goods Rules 2003.

The Code included in the Building Rules is reproduced from that prepared for Niue in 1990 by a team of experts using Fiji, Australia and New Zealand experience. The Building Rules place the Code in the Tokelau context.

This is Volume 1 of the Tokelau Building Code. It contains the Building Rules 2007 and the first and second documents of the Code in the Schedule to the Building Rules 2007. The third document of the Code is in Volume 1.

# **TULAFONO O NA TAKI FAU FALE 2007**

- Igoa
- Fakauigaga 2
- Tino Ahiahi 3
- Taki mo te Fauga o na Fale 4
- Komiti Fauga Fale 5
- Apalaiga mo he pemita 6
- 7 Aoga o te pemita
- 8 Pahiga

- 9 Taofia o he Pernita
- 10 Fakatonuga mo te Tukiga
- 11 Fale Fakapokepoke
- 12 HoligaTulatono
- 13 Tulafono e Tamau ai te Malo 14 Fakaheai
- Pepa Fakaopoopo

#### 1 Igoa

Ko na Tulafono ienei o na Taki Fau Fale 2007.

#### Fakauigaga 2

l na Tulafono ienei –

"fale" ko tona uiga he fale katoa pe he vaega lava o he fauhaga e fakaaoga pe e ono fakaaoga -

- Ke nonofo ai ni tino; (i)
- Koga e fai ai ni galuega; (ii)

Koga teu kope pe ni ietahi lava mea, ma e iei ai ho he tahi fauhaga lava e tau ki ni koga nonofo, galuega pe teu ai ni kope, kae e he aofia ai na fauhaga he tumau fua ki te fakaaogaga;

- "Taki" ko tona uiga ko te Taki a Tokelau mo te Fauga o na Fale teia e fakamatala mai i te tulafono 4;
- "fau" ko tona uiga ko te faia o he galuega (e kehe mai ai ma na galuega he tumau) e fakakautu pe fakaaoga ki te lagolagogia, fakakopoopo, fai ni huiga, pe ko te toe fakagaoiga o he fale e aofia ai na galuega e fakakautu pe fakaaoga ki te hapalaiga o te vai pe ko te eletihe ki pe i loto o he fale;

"Tino "Ahiahi" ko tona uiga ko te Tino Ahiahi e tofia i lalo o te tulafono 3:

"pemita" ko tona uiga ko he pemita e fai i lalo o na Tulafono ienei.

#### 3 Tino Ahiahi

Ko he Tino Ahiahi e tofia i loto o te Kaufaigaluega Fakamua a Tokelau taua te pulepulega o te fakatinoga o na Tulafono ienei.

#### Taki mo te Fauga o na Fale 4

- Ko te tulaga ma te fakatonutonuga e tau ki te fauga o na fale e (1)veia ona fakatatia mai i loto o te Pepa Fakaopoopo ko na Taki Fau Fale.
- Ko te Taki a Tokelau mo te Fauga o na Fale e fakaaoga ki te (2) fauga o ho he fale.

# **BUILDING RULES 2007**

- 1 Name
- 2 Interpretation
- 3 Inspector
- 4 Building Code
- 5 Buildings Committee
- 6 Application for permit
- 7 Validity of permit
- 8 Inspection

- 9 Suspension of permit
- 10 Dangerous buildings
- 11 Dangerous buidlings
- 12 Offences
- 13 Rules to bind Government
- 14 Repeal
- Schedule

#### 1 Name

These are the Building Rules 2007.

# 2 Interpretation

In these Rules –

"building" means the whole or part of any structure used or capable of being used –

- (i) For human habitation;
- (ii) As a place in which work is performed;
- (iv) For storage of commodities articles or things,

and includes every other structure associated with such habitation work or storage, but does not include a structure that is temporary having regard to the purpose for which it shall be used;

"Code" means the Tokelau Building Code prescribed under Rule 4;

"construct" means to carry out work (other than temporary work) that has the purpose or effect of supporting, adding to, altering, or adapting a building and includes work that has the purpose or effect of supplying water or electricity to or within a building;

"inspector" means the inspector appointed under Rule 3;

"permit" means a building permit issued under these Rules.

# 3 Inspector

An inspector shall be appointed in the Tokelau Public Service for the purpose of administering these Rules.

# 4 Building Code

- (1) The standards and controls relating to the construction of buildings set out in the Schedule shall be the Tokelau Building Code.
- (2) The Tokelau Building Code shall apply to the construction of every building.

# 5 Komiti Fauga Fale

- (1) (i) E iei te Komiti Fauga Fale i loto na nuku takitahi
  - (ii) Ko te Komiti Fauga Fale e i loto ai te Pulenuku, he kamuta, he palama ma te tino fai moli, te Faipule (ko te Takitakifono), ma te Tino Ahiahi.
- (2) E heai he tino e ia fakatua pe fai ni huiga ki he fauhaga o he fale i loto o te nuku e aunoa ma he pemita ma he fakatagaga mai te Komiti Fauga Fale.
- (3) Ko te Komiti Fauga Fale e ahiahigia ho he fale ma tuku atu ni fakatonutonuga, tuku gutu pe tuhituhia, e ologatahi ma na Tulafono ienei, te Taki, na Tulafono Olamalolo 2003 ma te Tulafono o te Eletihe, Kaha ma na Koloa Fakamatakutaku 2003 ieia e tau ki te koga, fauga, kope faufale, tane vai, kope mo te tukutua ma ietahi lava manakoga tau olamaloloina o te fale.
- (4) Ho he tino e hē uhitakia na fakahinoga uma a te Komiti Fauga Fale, kua holitulafono.
- (5) (i) Kafai he tino e he uhitaki pea, i loto o te vaitaimi talafeagai, na fakahinoga tuhituhia i loto o te Tulafono tenei, ko te tino hiaki fale e hui e ia pe tukugia te fale fakatatau ki te fakatonuga.
  - (ii) Kafai te Pahifale e galue fakatatau ki te vaega-palakalafa
     (i) ka tagi te nuku ke totogi e te tino e o ia te fale te tau na fakafano i te toe fakaleleiga, pe ko te talaga o te fale.

# 6 Apalaiga mo he pemita

- (1) Ko he tino e fofou ke ia fauagia he fale ka apalai ki te Komiti mo Faugafale mo he pemita e uiga ki te fale.
- (2) Ko na apalai uma e fai fakatatau ki te palakalafa (1) ka aofia uma ai na fakamatalaga e tatau ona maua e te Pahifale kae ke fakamautinoa ai ko te fauga o te fale e mulimuli ki te Taki Fau Fale ma, e aofia ai –
  - (i) He ata e mo te koga/tugafale e fakamatalatala ai na itu ienei -
    - te koga e fakatu ai te fale ma te va mai na tuakoi takitahi e hikomia ai, e kamata fua atu na tuakoi mai te vaega pito ki fafo o te fale;
    - (II) fua te va o te fale ma ni ietahi fale e tutu i loto o na tuakoi tugafale, kamata atu i na pito ki fafo o te fale;
    - (III) te lautele o ho he auala havali pe ko ho he auala e fakatafatafa i na tuakoi;
    - (IV) te koga e iei ai ni vaikeli, ma te va ma ni koga e fakaputu kiei ni lapihi, e kamata fua mai I na itu tautafa ki fafo o ni koga e iei ai ni itukaiga nofoaga venei;
    - (V) te koga patino e fanatu ai te eletihe ma te vai, ma te koga e fakatutu ai na itukaiga mea faigaluega e taki atu ai na ihe ma te vai;

# 5 Buildings Committee

- (1) (i) There shall be a Building Committee for each village.
  - (ii) The Building Committee shall consist of the Pulenuku, a carpenter, a plumber and an electrician, the Faipule (as Chairperson), and the inspector.
- (2) No person shall erect or make structural modifications to a building in a village without a permit and the prior approval of the Building Committee.
- (3) The Building Committee may inspect any building and give oral or written directions consistent with these Rules, the Code, the Health Rules 2003 and the Electricity, Gas and Dangerous Goods Rules 2003 in relation to the site, construction, materials, water supply, sanitation facilities and other health requirements of the building.
- (4) Any person who fails to comply with all reasonable directions of the Building Committee commits an offence.
- (5) (i) Where a person fails to comply within a reasonable time with a written direction made under this Rule the inspector may modify or demolish the building in accordance with the direction.
  - (ii) Where the inspector acts under subparagraph (i) the village shall have a claim against the owner of the building for the costs incurred in making the modification or the demolition.

# 6 Application for permit

- (1) A person who wishes to construct a building shall apply to the Building Committee for a permit in respect of the building.
- (2) Every application under paragraph (1) shall contain all the information that the inspector may reasonably require to ensure that the building complies with the Code and include
  - (i) A site plan detailing
    - the location of the building and distance from each boundary measured from the outer extremities of the building;
    - (II) the distance from any existing building within the boundaries of the site measured from the outer extremities of each building;
    - (III) the width of any road or access way adjacent to a boundary;
    - (IV) the location of any water bore and its distance from any waste disposal facility measured from the outer limits of such facility;
    - (V) the point at which electricity and water will be made available to the site and the location of the means by which the building shall be supplied;

- (ii) E peleni tuhituhia ma nia ata tuhituhia e fakamatala mai ai na itu ienei
  - (I) ni ata e 4 pe hili atu o te maualuga o te fale;
  - (II) he ata e fokotahi pe hili atu mo he vaega e fokotahi mo te fale;
  - (III) te maualuga stud height; ma
  - (IV) the ties;
- (iii) Vaega fakapitoa;
- (iv) Na aho e fuafua e paku kiei --
  - (I) te kamataga o te fauga o te fale;
  - (II) te aho e fakatu ai te fakavae ma te aho e fakauma ai na fakamalohiga studs;
  - (III) e fakauma ai na itufale (without wall linings) ma te tuakaukau;
  - (IV) e uma ai te fakapipikiga o na wall linings ki na itufale;
  - (V) e fakauma ai te fauga o te fale;
- (v) Te nofoaga e fau ai te fale;
- (vi) Te igoa ma te tuatuhi o te tino e o ia te fale;
- (vii) Te igoa o te tino e tufuga i te fauga o te fale, ma na igoa ma na tuatuhi o ni ietahi tino e konekalate i te galuega.
- (3) E heai he pemita e talia vagana ai ko na fakamatalaga I lalo o te palakalafa (2) e tuku atu ki te pahifale, ma, uhitakia te Taki o Faugafale.
- (4) Ko te pahiaga o te tukuatuga o he pemita e te Komiti o te Faugafale e fuafua ki na Tulafono ma na Taki ienei ---
  - E manakomia he fale e iei nei, e fakavae kiei ta faiga o te galuega, e fakatatau ki te pemita e maua atu, ke ogatahi ma te Taki o Faugafale ki na itu e mafai ke fakatino ai te galuega;
  - (ii) Fakatonu ni tukutukuga talafeagai venei e fuafua e te Pahifale e tatau kae ke fakamaonia ai ko te Taki e uhitakia
- (5) Hoko he tino e apalai ki he pemita, pe, kafai te tino apalai e he l luga o fenua, pe he ia mafaia oi apalai, ko te tufuga e ia faua te fale e ia logoa te Pahifale I he lipoti tuhituhia ni fakamatalaga e uiga tulaga ienei. Ko ni galuega e heki fakatinoa pe ko ni galuega na fakaopopo fua ki na galuega i loto o te apalai.
- (6) Ko he tino e holi e ia he tulafono, kafai e fakahala, e ono hala tupe e venei. E tolu ia holigatulafono i te tino e ia fakafaigaluegagia, pe auala atu ia te ia o he tahi tino ke aofia i te fauga o te fale –
  - (i) I te faia o ni galuega e kehe mai i na fakamatalaga na tukulima ki te Pahifale, ma
  - (ii) Kafai e heki iei he fakatagaga tuhituhia ma te Pahifale e uiga ki ni huiga I na fakamatalaga I te apalai na fai.

- (ii) A design plan with drawing detailing
  - (I) at least 4 elevations of the building;
  - (II) at least one section of the building;
  - (III) the stud height; and
  - (IV) the ties;
- (iii) Specifications;
- (iv) The dates upon which it is intended -
  - (I) that construction will commence;
  - (II) that the placement of foundations, and reinforcing studs will be completed;
  - (III) the walls (without wall linings) and roof will be completed;
  - (IV) fixing of wall linings will commence;
  - (V) that construction will be completed;
- (v) The place where the construction will take place;
- (vi) The name and address of the person who will be the owner of the building;
- (vii) The name and address of the person who will be responsible for the construction of the building, and the name and address of every subcontractor.
- (3) No permit will be granted unless the information required under paragraph (2) is submitted to the inspector and the building complies with the Code.
- (4) In approving the issue of a permit the Building Committee may, subject to these Rules and the Code
  - Require an existing building upon which construction work is to be undertaken, in respect of which work a permit will issue, to comply with the Code to the extent that the work to be undertaken allows;
  - (ii) Impose such reasonable terms and conditions that the inspector deems necessary to ensure that the Code is complied with.
- (5) Every applicant for a permit, or where the applicant is absent or unable to do so, the person responsible for the construction of the building, shall notify the inspector in writing of every deletion from or addition to information contained in an application for a permit.
- (6) Every person commits an offence and upon conviction shall be liable to a fine of 3 penalty units who engages or who causes any other person to be engaged in the construction of a building –
  - (i) Other than in accordance with information supplied to the inspector; and
  - (ii) Without the prior written approval of the inspector to the variation of such information.

# 7 Aoga o te pemita

Ko hoko he pemita, e fakataga ai te tino apalai ke kamata te fauga o te fale I te tukutukuga I te pemita, ma, e fakaauau lava ke uma te fale ma tauhihi ma tauhihi lava ki te Taki vagana -

- Ko te galuega e heki kamatagia I loto o te 12 mahina mai te aho na maua ai te pemita. Kafai e pa ki he tulaga venei, ko te pemita e fakaheai lava I te taimi tena; pe
- (ii) Ko te fauga o te fale e heki fakaauaua I he vaitaimi e katoa 6 mahina. Kafai e pa ki he tulaga venei, ko te pemita e fakaheai lava I te taimi tena; pe
- (iii) Ko te pemita na taofia I lalo o te Tulafono 9. Ko tona uiga e he afaina te pemita i te taimi na taofia ai

# 8 Pahiga

- (1) E iei te tukutukuga e o na pemita takitahi e venei. Kafai e iei he vaega o te fauga o te fale e ahiahigia I te taimi e fakatino ai te galuega, ko tona uiga, e heai e tino e galue I te fale e ia faia he tahi galuega e afaina ma he mafai ai te Pahifale ke fakatino hana ahiahiga ki te galuega, ke pa ki te taimi e tuhi ki te tufuga ke fakaauau ietahi galuega.
- (2) Ko na tukutukuga e uiga ki na galuega e fia pahia, ko tagata tautokatahi uma e galulue mo te fauga o te fale e -
  - (i) Logo e ia te Pahifale te taimi e tatau ai ke pahia he galuega; ma
  - (ii) Taofia e ia hoko he galuega e ke he mafai ai ona akatino he ahiahiga.
- (3) I na Tulafono ienei, ko na galuega e ahiahi e aofia ai -
  - (i) Na footings ma na fakavae (ma na galuega e fakaaoga ai na ukamea) ka ko heki palua te hima;
  - (ii) Te fakavakaga ma te puipuiga o na itufale;
  - (iii) Te kahoiga o te kaukau ka ko heki faia te fakaalo pe ko te tukiga o na ato.
- (4) E mafai te Pahifale I hoko he taimi, ke fano ki hoko he koga e fau ai he fale pe ko hoko he fenua e aofia I te pemita ke -
  - (i) Hiaki pe iei he pemita fakataga mo te galuega; pe
  - (ii) Fakamaonia ai pe uhitakia na Tulafono ma te Taki, ma kikila pe galue fakatatau ki te pemita;
- (5) E tuha ai ma na kautu o te palakalafa (1), e ono fehiligia e te Pahifale hoko he tino e ve e aofia I te fauga o te fale, ma, ko na tino uma e fehiligia e tatau ona tali uma ki na fehili a te Pahifale.
- (6) Ho he tino e ia taofia, polokagia, pe fakahehegia te Pahifale I te fakatinoga o ona tiute I lalo o te Tulafono tenei, pe he tali foki ki he fehili ma te Pahifale I lalo o te palakalafa (6) e holitulafono.

# 7 Validity of permit

Every permit entitles the applicant to commence the construction of the building in respect of which it is issued and remains in force until the construction of the building is completed consistent with the Code unless –

- (i) Construction is not commenced within 12 months from the date that the permit was issued, in which case the permit is automatically cancelled; or
- (ii) Construction of the building ceases for a continuous period of 6 months, in which case the permit is automatically cancelled; or
- (iii) The permit is suspended under Rule 9 in which case the permit has no effect during the period for which it is suspended.

# 8 Inspection

- (1) It is a condition of every permit that where the construction of a building involves work to be inspected, then no person engaged in the construction undertake any other work that will have the effect of preventing the inspector from carrying out a visual inspection of that work, until the inspector has stated in writing that the other work may proceed.
- (2) In respect of work to be inspected, every person responsible for the construction of a building shall
  - (i) Notify the inspector when such work may be inspected; and
  - (ii) Prohibit any work that will have the effect of preventing the inspection.
- (3) In these Rules, work to be inspected includes
  - (i) The footings and foundations (including steelwork) prior to the pouring of concrete;
  - (ii) The wall framing prior to the affixing of wall coverings;
  - (iii) The roof framing prior to the affixing of ceilings or roofing.
- (4) The inspector may, at any reasonable time, enter any land on which a building is being constructed and into any premises in respect of which a permit has been issued for the purposes of
  - (i) Determining whether a permit has been issued; or
  - (ii) Ascertaining whether the provisions of these Rules, the Code and any permit are being complied with;
- (5) For the purposes of paragraph (1), the inspector may interview any person who appears to be engaged in the construction and every person so interviewed shall, if within his knowledge, answer all questions put to him by the inspector.
- (6) Every person who prevents, obstructs or misleads the inspector in the performance of his duties under this Rule, or who fails to answer any question put to him under paragraph (6), commits an offence.

# Taofia o he Pemita

9

(1) E ono taofia e te Pahifale he pemita kafai-

- (i) Te Taki e heki uhitakiagia; pe
- (ii) Ko na tukutukuga I te pemita e he tauhihia; pe
- (iii) Ko na matakupu e i loto o te requisition e heki tauhihia; pe
- (iv) Ko ia e taofia e te tino e o ia te fale, pe ko te tufuga, pe ko ni ietahi tino faigaluega ke hiaki te pe uhitakia te Taki I te fakatinoga o te galuega.
- (2) Ko na pemita uma e taofia I lalo o te palakalafa (1) e fakaauau lava vagana -
  - Ko te tufuga e fakatino e ia te fauga ke ogatahi ma na fakatonuga pe ko na fakatagaga mai te Taki pe ko te pemita; -
  - (ii) Ko te Pahi fale e fakataga ke fuafua e ia na tukutukuga I te Taki pe ko te pemita pe na uhitakia.
- (3) Kafai he pemita e taofia, e heai he tino eia mafaia, kafai koi taofia te pemita, ke ia fakatinoa ni ietahi fakatinoga o te galuega fakatatau ki te pemita, vagana ai na galuega e tauhihia ai te Taki pe ko te pemita.

# 10 Fakatonuga mo te Tukiga

- (1) Kafai e molia he tino i na holigatulafono i lalo o na Tulafono ienei, e mafai e te Komehina oi fakaopoopo he fakahalaga, kae i lalo o te palakalafa (2), e ia mafai oi fakatonu te fale pe ko he vaega o te fale ke kave kehe, toe tala, pe tuki ki lalo i te kikilaga a te Pahifale.
- (2) E he fakatonua e te Fale mo te Kikilaga o na Tulafono ke toe kavekehe, tala, pe tuki ki lalo he fale vagana -
  - (i) Ko te kavekehega, te tala pe ko te tukiga e fakatino ai ia ahiahiga a te Pahifale I lalo o te Tulafono 8; pe
  - (ii) Ko te fale e kavekehe, tala pe tuki e fakapokepoke ma lamatia ai ia ola o tagata; pe
  - (iii) Ko te fale e kavekehe, tala pe tuki, e fakapokepoke ki te ola malolo o tagata.

# 11 Fale Fakapokepoke

- (1) Kafai kua talitonugia ko hoko he fale kua
  - I he tulaga fakapokepoke ki tagata e I loto ai, pe ko na fale tu tuakoi ma tagata feoaki; pe

# 9 Suspension of permit

- (1) The inspector may, suspend a permit where -
  - (i) The Code is not being complied with; or
  - (ii) The provisions of the permit are not being complied with; or
  - (iii) The matters set out in a requisition have not been complied; or
  - (iv) He is prevented by the owner of the building or his agents servants, workmen or employees or the person responsible for the construction of the building from determining whether the provisions of the Code or the permit are being complied with.
- (2) Every permit that is suspended under paragraph (1) remains suspended until
  - (i) The person responsible for the construction of the building causes such construction to comply with any requisition or the provisions of the Code or permit; or
  - (ii) The inspector is permitted to determine whether the provisions of the Code or the permit are being complied with and such determination has been made.
- (3) Where a permit is suspended, no person shall, while the permit remains suspended, undertake, or cause to be undertaken any further construction of the building to which the permit relates other than construction that is necessary to cause the building to comply with the requisition, the Code or the permit.

# 10 Demolition order

- (1) Where a person is charged with an offence under these Rules the Commissioner may in addition to imposing any penalty that may be prescribed, but subject to paragraph (2), order that the building or such part of a building as the Commissioner designates be removed, taken down, or demolished under the supervision of the inspector.
- (2) The court shall not order the removal, taking down, or demolition of a building unless
  - (i) The removal taking down or demolition will facilitate the inspector carrying out an inspection under Rule 8; or
  - (ii) The building to be removed, taken down, or demolished poses a threat to human life; or
  - (iii) The building to be removed, taken down, or demolished poses a threat to human health.

### 11 Dangerous buildings

(1) Upon being satisfied that any building is –

 In such a condition to be dangerous to persons in it or in any adjoining building or on any adjoining land or to passers-by; or

(ii) Kua I he tulaga kino, ma kua fakaaoga hehe ma lamatia ai na tino e nonofo pili mai pe ko tagata lautele;

E mafai e te Komiti Faugafale, kafai e he hili ifo I te tolu mahina te fakailoa ki te tino e o ia te fale, oi fakatonu ke taofia pe tuki ki lalo, pe he tulaga foki e mafai ai ke toe fakaleleia pe tuki ki lalo, fuafua ki te kikilaga a teKomiti Faugafale

- (2) Ho he fakatonuga e taofia pe tuki ai he fale, e fakamatala manino ai te auala e fakatino ai.
- (3) Kafai te fakatonuga e he uhitakiagia, e fakatino e te Pahifale te taofiga pe ko te tukiga o te fale ki lalo.
- (4) E toe ao mai e te Pahifale te tau na fafafano ki te tukiga pe ko te toe fakaleleiga o he fale I lalo o te tukutukuga tenei, fakatahi ai foki ni tupe na fakafano ki te Pahifale I lalo o te Tulafono tenei.
- (5) Kafai te tino eo ia te fale e he I maua, ko hoko he fakaaliga pe fakatonuga venei e fakapepeiki ki tona fale.
- (7) Kafai ko te fale e tuku ki lalo e te Pahifale, e fakakino pe fakatau e ia na mea faufale, ma fakaoga te tupe maua ke totogi ai na tupe na fakafano ki te galuega I lalo o te Tulafono tenei, ma kafai e he lava, e fakamalohia te tino e o ia ke totoga te paleni.

# 12 HoligaTulafono

- (1) Ho he tino e he ia fakatinoa na Tulafono ienei e holitulafono, ma, kafai e fakahala, e ono halatup e he hili atu i te 3 iunite o fakahalaga.
- (2) Kafai e fakahala tupe he tino ona kua holi te Tulafono, e mafai e te Komehina oi fakahala ma fakatonu te tino ke totoga te aofaki e he hili ake I te \$20 mo na aho takitahi, kamata mai I te aho na fakahala ai.

# 13 Tulafono e Tamau ai te Malo

Ko na Tulafono ienei e tamau ai te Malo.

# 14 Fakaheai

Ko te Tulafono 3 o na Tulafono o te Ola Malolo kua fakaheai.

# ΡΕΡΑ ΓΑΚΑΟΡΟΟΡΟ

# Taki mo te Fauga o na Fale:

Commentary on the Building Code Building Code Home Building Manual

### Exceptions

Such adaptation as necessary to Tokelau circumstances – no adaptation is valid unless it provides a standard of health and security that is as good or better than that in the Code.

(ii) In a dilapidated or ruinous condition and is being used in a disorderly manner so as to be obnoxious to the neighbouring inhabitants or to the public;

the Building Committee may, after not less than 3 month's notice to the owner of the building, order the building to be secured or taken down, or as the case may be, repaired or taken down as the Building Committee thinks fit, within a time to be specified in the order.

- (2) Every order requiring the building to be secured or repaired shall specify the manner in which the building shall be so secured or repaired.
- (3) If the order is not obeyed, the inspector may cause the building to be secured or taken down or repaired in compliance with the order.
- (4) The inspector may recover from the owner the cost of securing or taking down or repairing any building under this section, together with all expenses incurred by the inspector under this Rule.
- (5) Any such notice or order to the owner may, in the absence of the owner, be given by fixing the notice or order on the building.
- (6) If the building is taken down by the inspector, he may destroy or sell the materials, and apply the proceeds to payment of the expenses incurred under this Rule, and shall apply on demand pay any balance to the owner.

# 12 Offences

- (1) Every person who contravenes these Rules commits an offence and upon conviction shall be liable to a fine not exceeding 3 penalty units.
- (2) Where a fine is imposed for the breach of these Rules the Commissioner may in addition to imposing such fine order that the person convicted pay a sum not exceeding \$20 for each day that the offence continues after the date on which the conviction is entered.

# 13 Rules to bind Government

These Rules shall bind the Government.

# 14 Repeal

Rule 3 of the Health Rules 2003 is repealed.

# SCHEDULE

# **Building Code:**

Commentary on the Building Code; Building Code; Home Building Manual

**Exceptions:** Such adaptation as necessary to Tokelau circumstances – no adaptation is valid unless it provides a standard of health and security that is as good or better than that in the Code.

Taki mo te Fauga o na Fale

.

# COMMENTARY ON THE BUILDING CODE



# CONTENTS

## FOREWORD

#### A GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### A1 Interpretation

- A1.1 Definitions
- A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other References
- A1.3 Referenced Standards, etc.
- A1.5 Mandatory Provisions

#### A2 Acceptance of Design and Construction

- A2.2 Evidence of Suitability
- A2.3 Fire Resistance of Building Elements
- A2.4 Early Fire Hazard Indices

#### A3 Classification of Buildings and Structures

- A3.1 Principles of Classification
- A3.2 Classifications
- A3.3 Multiple Classification

#### A4 United Buildings

- A4.1 When Buildings are United
- A4.2 Alterations in a United Building

#### Specification

- A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference
- A2.3 Fire Resistance of Building Elements
- A2.4 Early Fire Hazard for Assemblies

#### **B** STRUCTURE

- B1.1 General Requirements
- DC FIRE RESISTANCE
- DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability
- DC1.1 External Walls of Class 1 Buildings

#### DD ACCESS AND EGRESS

DD1 Construction of Exits

DD1.1 Treads and Risers DD1.2 Curved Stairs DD1.3 Balustrades DD1.5 Number of Exits

#### DF HEALTH AND AMENITY

DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing

DF1.4 Weatherproofing of Roofs and Walls DF1.6 Waterproofing of Wet Areas in Building

- DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities
- **DF2.1 Facilities Required**
- DF3 Room Sizes and Heights
- DF3.2 Reduced Height Permissible
- DF4 Light and Ventilation

DF4.5 Ventilation of Rooms DF4.7 Ventilation Borrowed from Adjoining Rooms DF4.10 Sub-floor Ventilation

- DF5 Watersupply Plumbing
- DF5.3 Pipes which are not Easy to Access
- DF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- DF6.6 Unvented Branch Drains
- DF7 Roof Drainage
- DF7.1 Design of Roof Gutters
- DG ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
- DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues
- DG2.2 Open Fireplaces Deemed-to-Satisfy
- NC FIRE RESISTANCE
- NC1 Fire Resistance and Stability
- NC1.1 Type of Construction Required
- NC1.3 Lightweight Construction
- NC2 Compartmentation and Separation
- NC2.2 General Floor Area Limitations
- NC2.3 Health-careBuildings
- NC3 Protection of Openings
- NC3.2 Protection of Openings in External Walls
- NC3.3 Separation of Openings in Different Fire Compartments
- NC3.9 Openings for Service Installations-

#### Specification

- NC1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction
- NC1.4 Early Fire Hazard Indices
- NC3.2 Fire Doors, Smoke Doors, Fire Windows and Shutters
- NC3.10 Penetration of Walls, Floors and Ceilings by Services

#### ND ACCESS AND EGRESS

#### ND1 **Provision for Escape**

- ND1.1 Application
- ND1.3 Exit Travel Distance
- ND1.4 Distance Between Alternative Exits ND1.5 Dimensions of Exits ND1.6 External Stairways ND1.7 Travel by Stairways or Ramps ND1.8 Discharge from Exits

- ND1.9 Horizontal Exits

- ND1.10 Number of Persons Accommodated
- ND1.11 Measurement of Distances

ND1.12 Method of Measurement

#### ND2 **Construction of Exits**

- ND2.1 Application of Part ND2.2 Stairways and Ramps ND2.3 Installations in Exits and Paths of Travel
- ND2.4 Width of Stairways

Appendix

,

# FOREWORD

We had attempted to keep the language and style of the recently completed National Building Code reasonably simple. However we had to remain conscious of the fact that the Code will be called up in legislation as the primary document for building control. This placed some constraints on the language that we could use. A need has therefore arisen for an explanation of the complex provisions of the Code. The Commentary is aimed at satisfying this need to a large extent. The Commentary does not cover the Performance Requirements. These requirements have been couched in terms which would allow suitable flexibility. Any attempt at commenting on any of the Performance Requirements is likely to limit their generality. The Commentary therefore covers only the more difficult clauses of the Deemed-to-Satisfy provisions of the Code.

The time that was available to us to work on the Commentary was unrealistically short. Therefore only those clauses have been commented upon which in our view are the more difficult to understand. We have used plenty of diagrams to illustrate the various situations covered by these clauses.

The Commentary is just a set of comments on the provisions of the Code. The diagrams used are only illustrative examples and not definitive solutions to cover all circumstances. The Code alone is the authoritative document for the purposes of building control. Inspite of these limitations the Commentary should help users to find their way through the Code.

When working on the Commentary we noticed some errors in the Code. We have shown these errors and corrections in an Appendix to the Commentary so that it will help Code Administrators to issue formal advise of the corrections.

We have used several of the diagrams employed in the commentary on the Building Code of Australia as a guide to produce our diagrams. We are very thankful for this to the Australian Uniform Building Regulations Co-ordinating Council (AUBRCC) and the staff at the Division of Building, Construction and Engineering of the CSIRO, Australia. In particular I thank Hugh Knox, Manager, Regulations, Accreditations and Standards at the National Building Technology Centre, Sydney who has helped me through our discussions on several of the topics covered. Vishwa Goundar an artist in Suva, Fiji produced the diagrams for the Commentary. He has also produced the cover design. I thank him for his contribution. I am thankful to the Project staff, especially to Sashi Lata Pal, for their dedication in completing the Commentary in a very short time.

Suva : December 1990

Kris Ayyar Project Manager Pacific Building Standards Project 4 . . .

# SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### PARTA1 INTERPRETATION

#### A1.1 Definitions

The definitions given in the Code are intended to give very specific meanings to the words and phrases used in the Code. Such meanings could be different from dictionary meanings and meanings in the Australian, New Zealand and other Standards called up in the Code. However for the purpose of the Code the defined meanings will have priority over all other meanings.

**Combustible :** All materials are *combustible* under appropriate conditions. For the purpose of the Code a material is deemed to be *combustible* if it fails to pass the requirements of AS 1530.1.

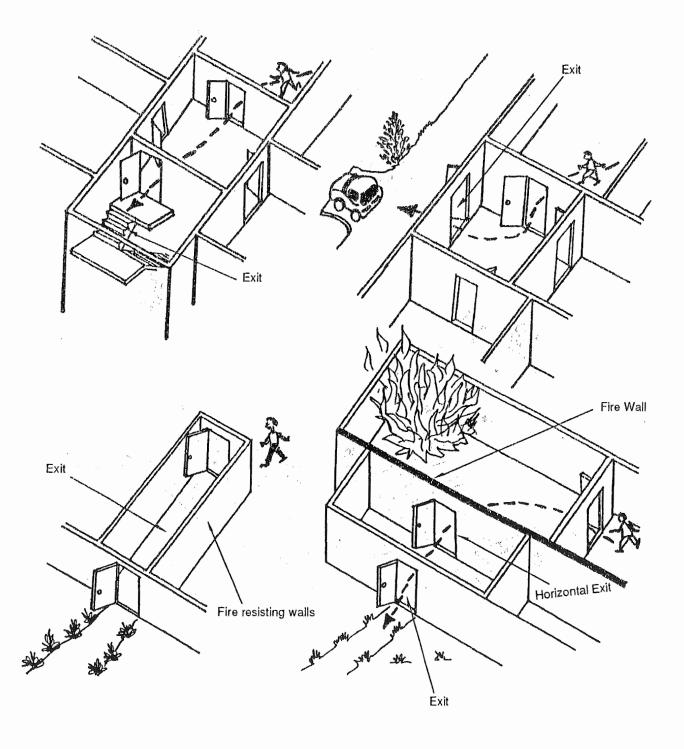
Effective Height: The *effective height* is an important measure in terms of the reach of fire fighting equipment. The safer practice will be to consider *effective height* from the lowest entrance level of a building by the side of which it is possible to station a fire engine. The definition however asks to measure *effective height* from the highest *storey* providing egress to a road or *open space*. The marginal reduction in safety is compensated by reduced cost. Measurement of *effective height* is illustrated in Sketch A1.1(i).



#### Sketch A1.1(i) Measurement of Effective Height

Exit: Exits as defined in the Code have the specific purpose of allowing a fast and safe egress in case of any emergency. The term has a range of meanings. A doorway for instance is an exit only when it directly opens to a roadway or open space unless it is a horizontal exit. Some of the different types of exit given in the definition are illustrated in Figure A1.1 (ii).

.







.

-

**Fire Compartment**: Parts of abuilding can be separated from other parts by construction which will prevent the passage of fire and smoke from one part to another. Each such part is then known as a *fire compartment*. There is no requirement in the definition that a *fire compartment* should be protected from the spread of fire and smoke from other adjoining buildings. However there are other requirements in the Code which provide for this suitably.

The fire load in a compartment is generally proportional to its *floor area*/volume. Therefore limiting the *floor area*/ volume of a *fire compartment* limits the severity and duration of a fire originating in it. Compartmentation protects the occupants from any fire outside the compartment. It also prevents the spread of fire from any compartment where it originated.

Where the fire service is not adequately equipped and manned or where sprinklers are not commonly used or where other such active means of fire protection are of limited availability, limiting the *floor area*/volume of *fire compartments* is an effective means of securing safety against fire.

**Fire-resistance Level**: The fire-resistance of any building element is expressed in terms of three criteria. These are:

Structural Adequacy - the element must have sufficient structural strength to continue to bear the loads for which it is designed for a sufficient time after it has been affected by fire.

Integrity - it must be capable of withstanding the effects of the fire for a sufficient time without changing shape or warping or undergoing any cracking, any of which might allow flames and smoke to pass through the element.

*Insulation* - it must be capable of limiting any rise in temperature from the fire side to the safe side to a prescribed value.

These are all determined by the standard fire resistance test in accordance with AS 1530.4 The results are expressed in minutes of duration over which the building element is capable of fulfilling the criteria. These are always expressed in the order of *structural adequacy* followed by *integrity* and then by the time for which it has sustained its insulating capability. Usually the times are expressed in multiples of 30 minutes.

An example of the fire-resistance level (FRL) of a wall is 90/60/30 which means that it will continue to bear the load for a period of 90 minutes after a fire of severity equivalent to the test fire, to be free from producing any cracking or warping for a period of 60 minutes and prevent any rise in temperature on the non-fire side by more than a prescribed level, for 30 minutes. If the wall is nonloadbearing and is only a fire resisting partition the very first figure in the value of the FRL would show a blank. In the example taken it would be -/60/30. In the case of a column the FRL will be relevant only for structural adequacy. The column by itself cannot prevent the passage of any smoke or flames nor can it prevent any rise in temperature around it. Therefore an example for a column would be 60/-/-. In the case of a fire door it will have no loadbe aring capability and therefore its FRL will be expressed with the first value shown as a blank. An

example would be -/60/30. If the door in this example is incapable of limiting the rise in temperature from one side to the other its FRL would be -/60/-.

**Fire-source Feature:** This is equivalent to an imaginary burning building. The Code allows buildings to be erected up to the allotment boundary, provided the stated requirements are fulfilled. If such a building were to catch fire it could endanger buildings in the neighbouring allotment through tongues of flame, flying brand, convection and radiant heat. Therefore the definition uses the appropriate land boundaries and the *external walls* of buildings within the allotment as *fire-source features*.

Flammability Index : This is determined on the basis of AS 1530.2. It is a composite index that consists of

- (a) the speed with which the material will catch fire,
- (b) the heat produced as a result of burning and
- (c) the extent to which the burning will spread within a given time.

The higher the *flammability index* the more the risk. The values range from 0 to 100.

The test is suitable only for sheet and woven materials which are reasonably pliable such as carpets and wall coverings and which do not readily melt or shrink away from an igniting flame.

**Horizontal Exit**: This has already been illustrated while commenting on *exit*. It must be remembered that a *horizontal exit* is not any door but one which is located in a *fire wall* that is *required* under the Code.

**Non-combustible :** This definition has been given separately for materials and for parts of a building or a construction.

In the case of any material it should not be *combustible* as explained in the definition of that term. However it can have thin finishes such as paint or wall paper with a thickness of no more than 1 mm. The *spread-of-flame index* should not exceed zero (see commentary on *spread-of-flame Index*). When the term is applied to construction or a part of a building, the construction or part must have *non-combustible* material on all exposed faces. The definition further gives a list of specific materials which are considered to be *non-combustible*.

**Professional Consultant**: The definition clearly specifies that the consultant must have appropriate experience in the relevant field. The consultant must either be registered under some existing legislation or must be a full member of a recognised Professional Institution or Association.

Site: The definition as given might give the impression that it is only that part of an allotment covered by the outline of the building. Such was not the intention when the term was defined. The term also includes the land in the vicinity of the building which is required to carry out its erection, continued use and demolition. There was however no intention to treat the whole of very large allotments as *site*. Smoke-Developed Index: This is an index which forms part of the early fire hazard properties of materials as tested under AS 1530.3 and relates to the optical density of the smoke produced under test conditions. The index ranges from 0 to 10; the higher the value of the index, the greater the risk from smoke in case of fire. The thickness of the material as well as the weight-to-surface area ratio can affect the amount of smoke produced. Where fire retardants are used the amount of smoke produced will increase in the case of timber and cellulosic materials whereas with plastics, they would reduce the smoke produced.

**Spread-of-Flame Index**: This is also an index measure when a material is tested under AS 1530.3 and relates to the rate of release of heat by a burning material under test conditions of radiant heat. It is applicable to wall lining material. The range of index is from 0 to10. An index of 10 means that flames can spread through the wall lining to a ceiling at a height of 2.7 m within 10 seconds under standard conditions whereas an index of zero means that flames do not reach the ceiling within 4.5 minutes of test ignition. The use of fire retardants can substantially reduce the *spread of flame index*.

**Window**: The Code definition includes not only windows as are normally understood but also glazed doors, glass brick walls etc. which can transmit natural light from outside a building into a room when in the closed position.

#### A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other References

The building Code is adocument containing only technical requirements. Matters which form contractual responsibilities should not therefore find any mention in the Code. It is for this reason that this clause specifically excludes any reference in the Australian and New Zealand Standards or other called-up documents, which deal with any matters of a contractual nature.

#### A1.3 Rereferenced Standards, etc.

All the Standards such as from Australia and New Zealand which are called-up in the Code refer to the latest edition of such Standards. These Standards are periodically revised by the organisations in the countries concerned. Code administrators should keep aware of changes to such Standards so that if any incompatibility arises as a result of a revision to a Standard an appropriate amendment to the Code is issued to exclude the effects of any such incompatibility.

#### A1.5 Mandatory Provisions

It is important to remember that the mandatory provisions of the Code are only the provisions of Section A and the Performance Requirements stated at the beginning of all other Sections. This in theory would allow a wide latitude for the designers/builders. Code administrators will find it very difficult to handle such a wide diversity of possibilities because of the very limited technical resources available to them to ensure that the mandatory provisions are fully met. This is why sub-section (b) of this clause demands that when designers/builders adopt the flexibility of using the Performance Requirements they are obliged to ensure that the final objectives and performance achieved are no less than what they could have achieved had they followed the deemed-to-satisfy provisions of the Code. Code administrators must remember that it is the objectives and performance attainable by the use of the deemed-tosatisfy provisions that are to be compared with what is proved to be achievable by the performance route. The details of the deemed-to-satisfy provisions are not relevant for such comparison and judgement. The onus of producing the proof for such comparison rests with whoever applies for the building permit.

# PART A2 ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

#### A2.2 Evidence of Suitability

This clause does not specifically require any legislation to support accreditation of building products. However if appropriate legislation were introduced and an appropriate administrative machinery set up it will allow for the easy acceptance of suitable products throughout the country without the need for satisfying each Approving Authority separately.

#### A2.3 Fire Resistance of Building Elements

See commentay on Specification A2.3.

#### A2.4 Early Fire Hazard Indices

See commentary on Specification A2.4.

### PART A3 CLASSIFICATION OF BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

#### A3.1 Principles of Classification

The purpose for which a building is designed, constructed or adapted, legally determines the use to which the building can be put. Such use governs the risks associated with the building for its users and the public. This is the reason for the particular manner in which buildings have been classified in the Code.

#### A3.2 Classifications

**Class 1 Buildings** This is a classification which essentially deals with a single dwelling house or very simple forms of multiple dwellings. The different subclassifications given are :

- (a) a single house in its allotment;
- (b) a large house some rooms of which are rented out to transient residents. The sub-classification would normally have belonged to Class 3. However by including it in Class 1 some concessions have been given. It will allow the operation of low tariff guest houses with the attendant advantages to the less affluent users. By limiting the total number of residents to 12 (including any permanent residents such as the owner's family) the overall risk to life and health is kept under check.

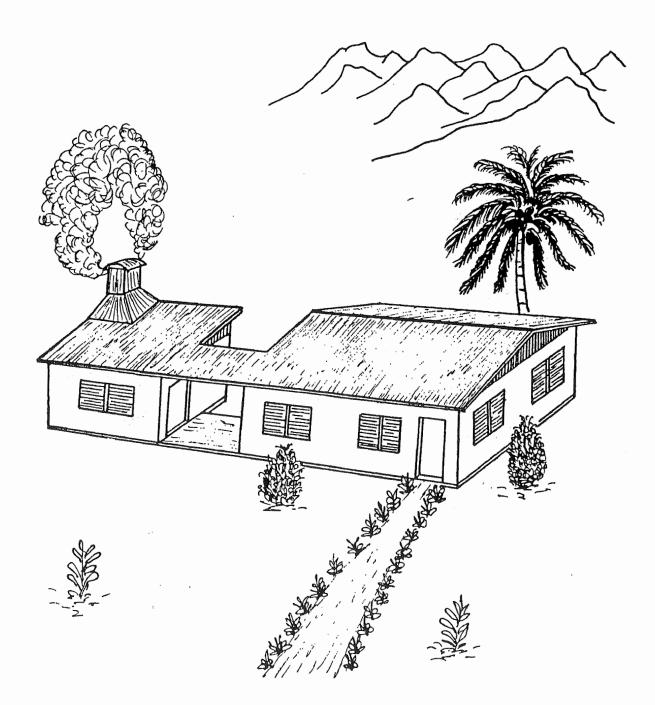
(c) This sub-classification is subdivided into two. The first one is where there can be a number of soleoccupancy units separated by common walls. The second division allows for a building in which there are a total of only 2 sole-occupancy units located one above the other. In the case of subclassification (c) each sole-occupancy unit must have its own direct egress to a road or open space without having to go through another soleoccupancy unit.

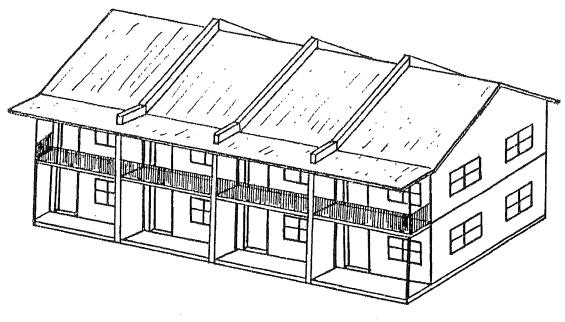
Examples of the sub-classifications (a) and (c) are shown in the attached sketches.

#### A3.3 Multiple Classification

Quite often separate parts of a *storey* are put to different uses and therefore each part will need to be classified separately. In such a case it is necessary to have the part pertaining to each Class to fully comply with the detailed requirements for that Class. However there may be cases where only a very small part of the *storey* is put to a use different from that of the major part. In order to consider such cases the following two questions must be asked :

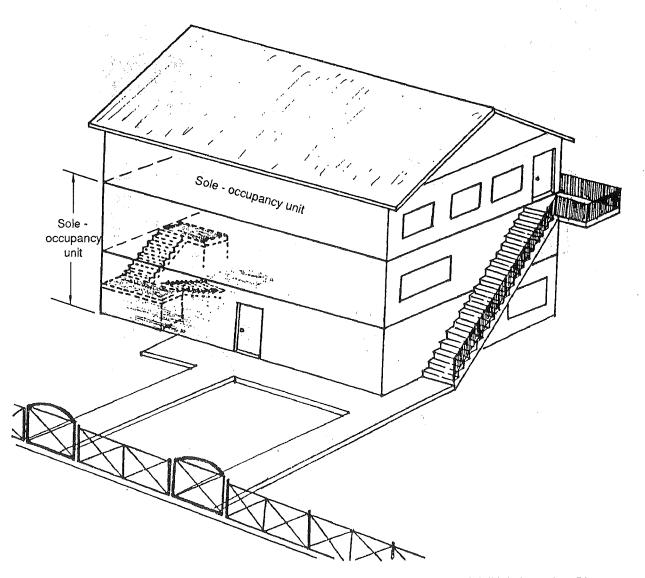
(i) does at least 90% of the *storey* pertain to one Class by virtue of the use to which it is put?

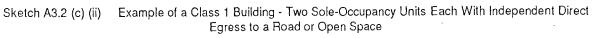




Note: Each unit must have an independent egress to a road or open space

Sketch A3.2 (c) (i) Example of a Class 1 Building - A Number of Sole-Occupancy Units Separated by Common Walls





.

(ii) Is the remaining part used for purposes other than a laboratory?

If the answers to both the questions are "yes" then the whole *storey* may be classified as appropriate for the major purpose.

# PART A4 UNITED BUILDINGS

# A4.1 When Buildings are United

Some building owners may find it advantageous to have two or more adjoining buildings interconnected through openings in the dividing walls between them. In such a case it is allowable to treat the interconnected buildings as a single building. The dividing walls can be treated as *internal walls* and if any of these walls are on a boundary they are not treated as *fire-source features*. The requirements for openings in *external walls* will not apply (whereas other requirements for separation etc. might apply).

Treating the interconnected buildings as a single building will also mean that the *floor areas* will increase. If the *internal walls* have to be *fire-resisting* the openings in such walls will also need to be protected with fire doors etc. as required in Part NC3.

# A4.2 Alterations in a United Building

The distinction between the meanings of *alteration* and *repair* as given in the definition at Part A1 of the Code must be clearly understood. If any *alteration* is done in a united building the altered building and parts must comply with the requirements of the Code. For instance if a dividing wall is on a boundary and the interconnecting opening in it is walled-up the boundary will become a *firesource feature*.

# Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

The Code calls up either Australian or New Zealand Standards as *required*. In a few instances it calls up either one or the other. Where only the Australian Standards or the New Zealand Standards have been called up, Code users are allowed to make use of the equivalent New Zealand or Australian Standard. However when this is done it is necessary to ensure technical consistency. While adopting AS 1170 Part 2, the New Zealand Standard NZS 4203 deletes the requirements for cyclone effects. Therefore NZS 4203 Part 4 is not appropriate for use with this Code. The other parts (1, 2 & 3) of NZS 4203 are appropriate. It should be noted that the Standards Association of Australia and of New Zealand have decided to progressively modify their individual Standards to common Standards applicable to both countries. In a few short years the majority of important Standards will be common for both countries.

# Specification A2.3, Fire Resistance of Building Elements

This Specification gives the *fire-resisting* properties of some of the building elements listed in it. It permits the calculation of the FRL of building elements based on the results of tests on prototypes. It must be remembered that any fire engineering calculations must be performed by a *Professional Consultant*.

# Specification A2.4 Early Fire Hazard for Assemblies

These tests are done to comply with AS 1530.3. They apply to wall lining materials. The tests are based on a progressive increase in intensity of radiant heat which simulates what could reasonably happen during the early development of a fire. The early fire hazard indices are as follows:

- 1 Ignitability Index,
- 2 Spread-of-Flame Index,
- 3 Heat Evolved Index, and
- 4 Smoke-Developed Index

The spread-of-flame index and smoke-developed index have already been explained while commenting on the definition of these two terms in Part A1. The ignitability index relates to the time taken under standard test conditions when the volatile products from the material can easily be ignited by a small flame. The index is zero if ignition does not take place under the conditions. The maximum value of the index is 20 which indicates quick ignitability.

The heat evolved index relates to the amount of heat released by a burning material. The index ranges from 0 to10 and the higher the index the more the heat released and the involvement of the material in setting fire to other *combustible* materials nearby. The heat evolved index can be affected by the thickness of the material and its weight-to-surface ratio. Where fire retardants are effectively applied to materials the heat evolved index can be reduced.

# SECTION B

This section of the Code takes up only a few pages although the structural performance of buildings is extremely important to ensure the safety of the users and the public. This is because structural engineering is a highly developed technology as compared for instance to fire engineering. This allows the structural requirements of the Code to be principally listed in terms of appropriate structural Standards for design and materials.

#### **B1.1 General Requirements**

This clause demands provision against progressive collapse. This is mentioned because a relatively minor failure in a part of a structure can initiate a sequential set of failures in adjoining parts. The total damage would be

# STRUCTURE

substantial. Such progressive collapse has occurred in prefabricated structures. In such structures care must be taken to design, fabricate and erect adequate connections to take care of all likely forces. The tolerances specified in the design must not be exceeded in fabrication and erection.

Other precautions against progressive collapse include:

- Designs that take into account severe local effects such as from explosion and the impact of vehicles, and
- 2 Design elements such that the failure of a critical element does not lead to the failure of the whole structure although other elements in it might be over stressed until remedial action is taken.

.

# SECTION DC FIRE RESISTANCE

Statistics in countries around the world indicate that the majority of deaths and injuries as a result of fire, takes place in small domestic incidents. However building codes around the world are in general far less stringent on fire safety requirements for single dwellings as against the requirements for multiple dwellings and commercial buildings. One possible reason is that in the case of single dwellings the responsibility for prevention of uncontrollable fire usually rests with the owner and/or the residents. Secondly individual domestic incidents although they might result in great tragedy for the family concerned, do not affect large numbers of the public as would be the case with multiple dwellings and commercial buildings.

The provisions in this Section of the Code which apply to Class 1 buildings reflect the trend in other countries in that they are very minimal.

# PART DC1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

# DC1.1 External Walls of Class 1 Buildings

As long as Class 1 buildings are set back from the boundary and other buildings within the allotment the specified minimum distance, there is no need to comply with any fire resistance requirements. There are further concessions for Class 1 buildings allowed under other clauses in this Part.

#### The second s

•

-

.

·

ç

## SECTION DD

## PART DD1 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

## DD1.1 Treads and Risers

Going up or down a very large number of consecutive steps in a stairway without intermediate landings for breaking the upward/downward motion can be very tiresome. This is why the maximum number of risers in any one flight is limited to 18. The relationship between the dimensions of the goings and risers given in Table DD1.1 of the Code are based on the attached Sketch DD1.1. The sketch illustrates the safe *pitch* for ramps, stairs and ladders.

The openings between risers have been limited to 100 mm because detailed statistics have shown that any larger opening will be unsafe for small mobile children.

## **DD1.2** Curved Stairs

ACCESS AND EGRESS

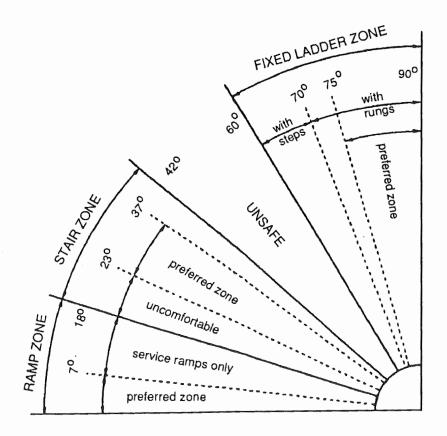
The requirements of this clause are intended to ensure the safety of the users without limiting practicality.

## **DD1.3 Balustrades**

Once again the requirements of this clause emphasise the need for safety especially of small mobile children.

## DD1.5 Number of Exits

A minimum of two *exits* has been specified. One of these *exits* can even be a *window* or a trap door. However when such unconventional *exits* are used the code specifies the minimum conditions which will ensure that they are safely usable during any emergency.



Sketch DD1.1 Recommended Pitch for Ramps, Stairs and Ladders

·

## SECTION DF

## HEALTH AND AMENITY

## PART DF1 DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

### DF1.4 Weatherproofing of Roofs and Walls

The code does not spell out any particular Standard for roof coverings. The current practice in the country is to use metal roofing, various brands of metal tiles etc. Heavier roof coverings such as clay tiles are not generally used. It is relevant to note that heavy roof coverings will increase the risk of damage during earthquakes.

Roofing manufacturers usually provide sufficient information on the correct ways of fixing their products. In addition many of them have had their products tested by recognised laboratories and have with them certificates to show the extent to which their products can withstand cyclonic wind loads. The cyclic change in forces on the roof during cyclones substantially weaken the roofing material and its immediate fasteners. The hairline cracks/ burrs produced when holes are drilled or punched in roofing sheets act as starting points for failure especially when the strength of the roofing material is substantially reduced as a result of cyclic loading. For the same reason when straps are used as fasteners, it is far better to buy them with factory punched holes.

With some fasteners such as roofing screws special cyclone washers are available. These washers help to reduce the force on the roofing material close to the fastener where the roof is structurally at its weakest.

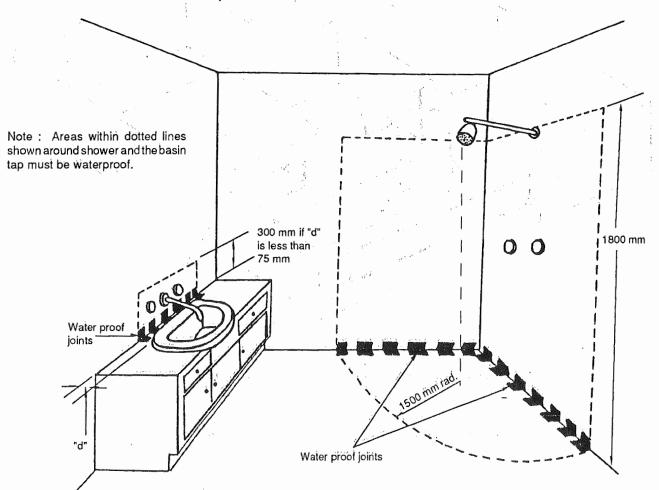
The only manufacturers known to us who manufacture such special load-spread washers for use with nails are:

Hylton Parker Fasteners P O Box 31-401 Milford Auckland New Zealand

The cyclic pattern of loading during high winds also affects the fasteners in another way. If there is any slackness in the fastener (whether it be screws, nails, straps, fencing wire etc.) it would contribute to a sudden weakening of the fastener material and failure can be at much lower loads than otherwise. For this reason no slackness should be left in any fastener system used.

### DF1.6 Waterproofing of Wet Areas in Building

The provisions in this clause can be improved in many innovative ways. However any variation from conventional practices might not be acceptable to approving authorities unless evidence is produced to show otherwise. AS 3740 which deals with the weatherproofing of wet areas within residential buildings gives details of construction techniques for wall/floor areas. Sketch DF1.6 shows the extent of waterproofing *required* by this clause.



Sketch DF1.6 Requirement for Water Proofing of Areas Around Showers, Basins, Sinks, etc.

## PART DF2 COOKING AND SANITARY FACILITIES

## **DF2.1** Facilities Required

The facilities called up in this Clause are the absolute minimum that will ensure the maintenance of satisfactory health and sanitation.

## PART DF3 ROOM SIZES AND HEIGHTS

## DF3.2 Reduced Height Permissible

This clause permits the building of A-framed dwellings and other such designs without undue restriction.

## PART DF4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

## DF4.5 Ventilation of Rooms

This clause *requires* natural ventilation for *habitable rooms*, *sanitary compartments* etc. However an allowance is given to provide mechanical ventilation where it is not practical to provide natural ventilation for toilets, laundries

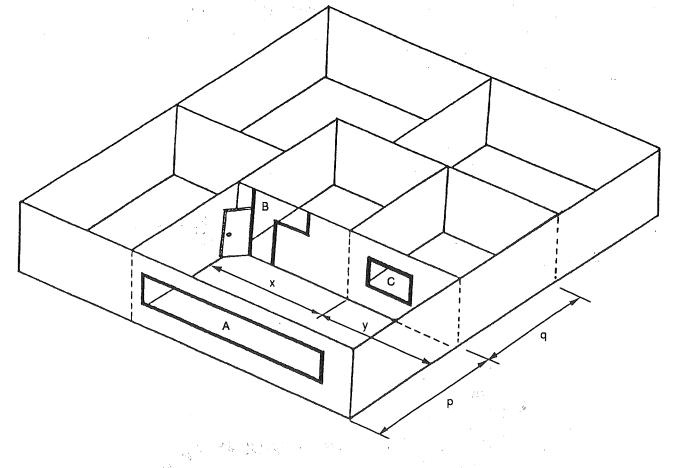
and such like. A mechanical ventilation system is *required* to comply with AS 1668.2. It is pointed out that the requirements of AS 1668.2 are quite exhaustive and compliance will only be necessary as is relevant to the particular application. For instance in the majority of the cases a suitably placed exhaust fan with the exhaust air being discharged outside the building should be sufficient.

## DF4.7 Ventilation Borrowed from Adjoining Rooms

The principle of borrowing ventilation and lighting with the provision of *required* areas of openings is illustrated in the attached Sketch DF4.7.

## DF4.10 Sub-floor Ventilation

The moisture that evaporates from the soil beneath a building can damage the material of the floor especially if it is of timber and create dampness and unpleasant odours. Damage can arise from rotting or attack by termites, dissolved salts penetrating into masonry supports as well as the rusting and other corrosion of metal framing components. In the case of timber flooring the clearances provided from the ground are the very minimum.



A must comply with the Code requirements for a floor area equal to (p + q). (x + y)

- B must comply with the Code requirements for a floor area equal to x . q
- C must comply with the Code requirements for a floor area equal to y. q

Sketch DF4.7 Borrowed Lighting and Ventilation

## PART DF5 WATERSUPPLY PLUMBING

## DF5.3 Pipes which are not Easy to Access

There are many practical instances where watersupply pipes embedded in walls are damaged due to corrosion, heat or water hammer. If failure and leakages occur it becomes very expensive to locate the faults and repair the damage. In the mean time there will be continuing nuisance and dampness.

## PART DF6 SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

## DF6.6 Unvented Branch Drains

This clause refers to the cases where the risk of dangerous and unpleasant gases escaping into occupied premises is "minimal". The term "minimal" can lead to disputed interpretation. However the concession given is very much limited by the requirements of sub-clauses DF6.6.1 and DF6.6.2 of the Code.

The risk of escape of dangerous and unpleasant gases into occupied premises is most relevant to connections :

from en-suite toilets/bathrooms which can affect sleeping occupants, and

from kitchens in those cases where the dining area is not separated by walls from it.

In all other cases these risks can be taken without serious consequences. With all the limitations to the concession the number of occasions and the duration of such occasions when dangerous/unpleasant gases can escape would be quite small.

## PART DF7 ROOF DRAINAGE

## **DF7.1 Design of Roof Gutters**

The sizing of eaves gutters is much less stringent than that of external box and valley gutters. With eaves gutters the damage that is likely to be done to the building and the inconvenience to the occupants will generally be less serious than overflow from internal and valley gutters. This is why a provision has been made for the design of internal and valley gutters to *require* a capacity that is sufficient for a 100 year return rainfall intensity whereas the corresponding period for eaves gutters is only 20 years. This also explains the reason for the greater free board and greater longitudinal slope *required* for internal box gutters as compared to eaves gutters.

## SECTION DG ANCILLIARY PROVISIONS

## PART DG2 FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

## DG2.2 Open Fireplaces Deemed-to-Satisfy

In the case of external kitchens the fire place meant for cooking is not intended to be covered by this clause.

### SECTION NC FIRE RESISTANCE

There are two broad methods of protecting a building from fire. These are :

- Passive protection in which fire in any particular (a) part of the building is contained by the use of fire resisting construction. The materials used and their disposition and layout give the building protection.
- Active fire protection in which suitable equipments, (b) are brought into action to prevent the spread of fire. These include sprinklers, fire hoses, the use of the fire service and so on.

This Section deals with the passive methods of fire protection.

The fire hazard to a building is determined by a combination of the use to which the building is put, the fire load in the building, its height, the openings in the building envelope, and the distance from other buildings. The intended use of a building is denoted by the system of classification given in the Code at Section A.

## PART NC1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

## NC1.1 Type of Construction Required

The requirements are relatively simple. All Class 2 and 3 buildings are required to conform to a single Type of construction as detailed in Specification NC1.1.

## NC1.3 Lightweight Construction

The main requirement for lightweight construction is the need to prevent any likelihood of mechanical damage to it. Any mechanical damage can substantially reduce the integrity and/or insulation criteria of fire resistance and thereby reduce or negate its intended purpose.

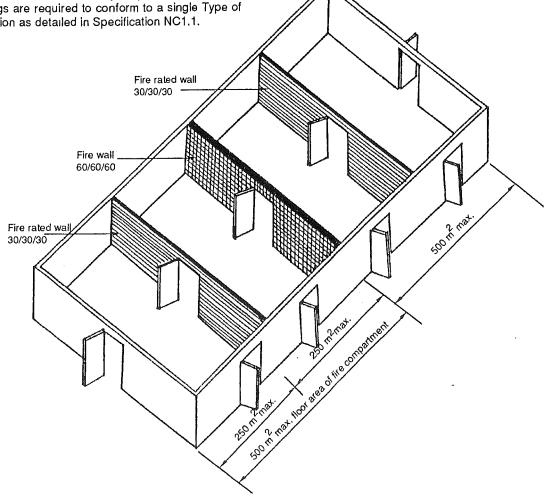
## PART NC2 COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

## NC2.2 General Floor Area Limitations

The size of the fire compartment reflects the possible fire load and therefore the severity and duration of any likely fire. The active fire fighting facilities available in the country are substantially limited. These considerations are reflected in the limitations to the maximum floor areas and volumes of any fire compartment . Health-care buildings have more stringent requirements (clause NC2.3). ÷.

## NC2.3 Health-care buildings

The limitations on the sizes of fire compartments in healthcare buildings are quite logically different from those of other buildings. These limitations are illustrated in Sketch NC2.3.



Limitations of Size of Fire Compartment in Ward Areas of Health-Care Buildings Sketch NC2.3

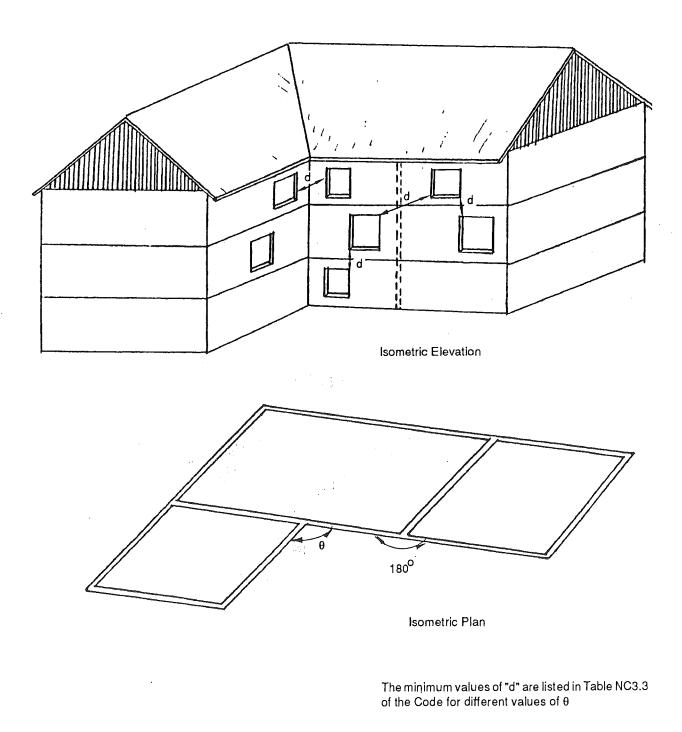
## PART NC3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

## NC3.2 Protection of Openings in External Walls

Fire can spread from one building to another through direct attack by flames, convection of heat, radiation or by flying brands. It is very impractical and uneconomical to provide the fire resistance to openings that is applicable to walls and other building elements. Therefore the more the openings, the greater the vulnerability of the building to fire. Keeping 1.5 m away from any *fire-source feature* will reduce the risk of fire spreading from one building to another.

## NC3.3 Separation of Openings in Different Fire Compartments

The requirements of this clause are illustrated in Sketch NC3.3.



## Sketch NC3.3 Separation of Openings in Different Fire Compartments

## NC3.9 Openings for Service Installations

This clause exempts the *external wall* and the roof from the requirement that their FRL or a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire* be maintained where services such as electrical cables, plumbing, etc. penetrate them. In the case of all other building elements any penetration must not impair the FRL or the resistance to the *incipient spread of fire*. The concessions to the *external wall* and roof are based on the following:

- in general external walls are sufficiently away from a fire-source feature that impairment to fire resistance properties at the isolated location where services penetrate them do not reduce safety in any appreciable way.
- usually for the sake of aesthetics and for prevention of rain penetraton all openings are reasonably closed to a good standard.

The concessions given in this clause will also enable to have an economical location in buildings of principal facilities such as toilets adjacent to the external envelope.

## NC3.10 Installation Deemed-to-Satisfy

Sub-clauses (a) to (f) list various methods of satisfying

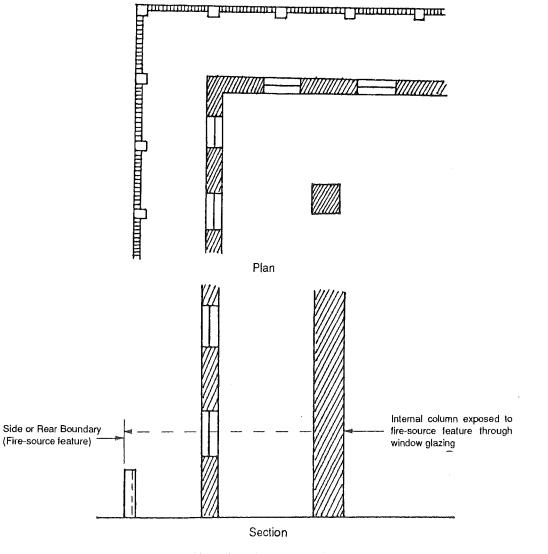
the requirements of clause NC3.9. These measures are further amplified in Specification NC3.10. Where none of these deemed-to-satisfy provisions are applicable the designer/builder will have to produce a solution acceptable to the Approval Authority as satisfying the requirements of NC3.10.

## SPECIFICATION NC1.1 FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

## **2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

## 2.1 Exposure to Fire-Source Features

The commentary explains *fire-source feature* as equivalent to an imaginary burning building. According to the Code definition this is the far boundary of a road adjoining the allotment, a side or rear boundary of the allotment, or an *external wall* of another building on the same allotment which is not of Class 10. Sub-clause (a) states that a part of the building element is exposed to a *fire-source feature* if there is no obstruction to any horizontal line between that part and the *fire-source feature* or a vertical projection of the feature. Any obstruction to be considered effective in preventing exposure must have a FRL of not less than 30/-/-. Further such obstruction must not be transparent or translucent. These are illustrated in Sketch Spec NC1.1 (i).



Sketch Spec NC1.1 (i)

Sub-clause (b) complements the requirements regarding distances to *fire-source features* given in Table 3 of this Specification. The shorter the distance to a *fire-source feature* the greater the risk from fire. This sub-clause *requires* that any building element which is at varying distances from a *fire-source feature* must have the FRL applicable to the closest distance. A concession given by this clause is if the building element is divided into different independent parts then each part need only satisfy the FRL applicable to its shortest distance from the *fire-source feature*. When this sub-clause is applied it must be remembered that it does not override clause 2.2.

## SPECIFICATION NC 1.4 EARLY FIRE HAZARD INDICES

The different indices which denote early fire hazard have already been explained in the commentary. These indices are ignitability index, heat evolved index, *spread-of-flame index*, and *smoke-developed index*. The limitations for these indices for various uses given in the Specification will ensure reasonable safety for the occupants of the buildings concerned.

4 Fire-Retardant Coatings

While using fire-retardant coatings the precautions given under this clause in the Specification must be followed; otherwise it could lead to danger to occupants.

## SPECIFICATION NC3.2 FIRE DOORS, SMOKE DOORS, FIRE WINDOWS AND SHUTTERS

Fire/smoke doors, fire *windows* and shutters were earlier not available with sufficient ability to provide high *insulation* levels. However in recent times good quality fire/smoke doors, *windows* and shutters have been developed. It is essential that these items not only comply with the FRL requirements as purchased but also when fixed in position and used. Regular maintenance should be carried out by qualified persons on fire/smoke doors, fire *windows* and shutters. These come in complete assemblies including hinges, door closers, etc. Test certificates and performance apply to the total assembly. Any variation even in minor detail could seriously reduce the performance.

## SPECIFICATION NC 3.10 PENETRATION OF WALLS, FLOORS AND CEILINGS BY SERVICES

This Specification gives the details by which penetration of building elements or installation of services etc. does not impair the *fire resistance levels* of those elements. There are several instances where fires have destroyed buildings through neglect to ensure proper levels of fire stopping of such penetrations, even though all the building elements had the *required* levels of fire resistance.

## SECTION ND ACCESS AND EGRESS

One of the primary aims of this Section is to ensure that in an emergency all occupants of a building are able to get safely out of it in as short a time as is practical. Studies of experimental and actual fires have shown time and again that the alertness of the occupants, their familiarity with escape routes and prompt communication of any developing emergency are more important in saving lives than technical innovations and built-in preventive measures. While the Code cannot lay down standards for levels of awareness of the occupants in relation to escape routes it is desirable that building owners and occupiers incorporate the conduct of periodic escape drills to suit varying scenarios. However awareness and regularity of training cannot be relied upon in every case and therefore the need for passive and active fire protection.

## PART ND1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

## ND1.1 Application

The internal parts of *sole-occupancy units* in Class 2 buildings are excluded from the application of this Part for the reason that even transient occupants of *sole-occupancy units* will be able to have a good knowledge of the escape route within the unit. The Part fully applies to the facilities *required* outisde of the *sole-occupancy units* in Class 2.

### ND1.3 Exit Travel Distances

The distances prescribed under the various sub-clauses for the two different Classes of building take into account the expected behaviour pattern of occupants. In addition in the case of Class 2 buildings there is every likelihood of the need to evacuate on receipt of a warning while sleeping. In the case of *health-care buildings* there is the likelihood of sed ated and incapacitated patients having to be evacuated. FRL of 60/60/60

The maximum distances specified will ensure that in the case of buildings of very large *floor area* there will be a sufficient number of *exits* available in an emergency.

## ND1.4 Distance Between Alternative Exits

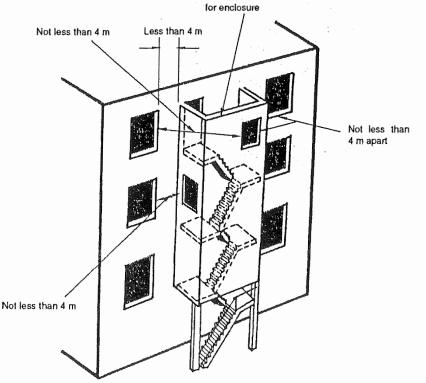
The chances of the occupants of a building escaping from within a building safely and in the shortest practicable time will be when all the *required exits* are spaced uniformly. In terms of other considerations this may not always be possible or desirable. In such cases there is a need to ensure that any two alternate *exits* are not too close to each other. If they are very close it is quite possible that a fire could block both *exits* at the same time. The Code therefore prescribes that these *exits* should not be closer than 9 m apart. Spacing alternate *exits* too far apart will also defeat their purpose. Also in the case of occupants who are likely to be asleep or under medical care the maximum distance between alternate *exits* must be shorter than in any other case. This requirement has also been included in this clause.

## ND1.5 Dimensions of Exits

This clause spells out reasonable practical ways of complying with clause NDP2.1 of the Performance Requirements of this Section. Whereas the Performance Requirements are based on experimental analysis the provisions in ND1.5 are based on empirical practice.

### ND1.6 External Stairways

When external stairways are used as required *exits* there is a necessity to ensure that escape from the building through the stairway is safe. This clause ensures that vulnerable sections of the *exit* are suitably protected. This is illustrated in Sketch ND1.6.



Sketch ND1.8 Requirements for External Stairways

## ND1.7 Travel by Stairways or Ramps

This clause details the requirements and restrictions for the use of stairways and ramps provided as *required exits*.

## ND1.8 Discharge from Exits

These requirements ensure that once the occupants of a building have safely walked along an *exit* they will face no obstruction or risk from fire and smoke when entering a road or *open space*.

## ND1.9 Horizontal Exits

Horizontal exits do not provide egress from a fire/smoke affected building. They only allow a quick means to escape from a fire/smoke affected part of a building to a safer part. This is why restrictions are placed on the circumstances under which *horizontal exits* can be recognised as *required exits*. The last sub-clause *requires* sufficient area on either side of a *fire wall* with a *horizontal exit* in it so that it will be possible to accommodate all the bed-ridden patients from both sides on either side of the *fire wall* in the case of a *health-care building*.

## ND1.10 Number of Persons Accommodated

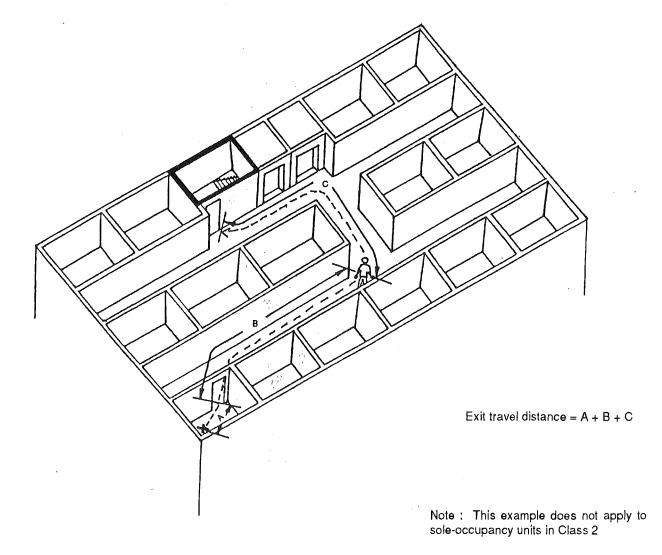
The accompanying Table in the Code gives the basis for calculating the number of persons for whose emergency evacuation *exits* have to be designed. Where it is possible to assess the number of occupants on a factual or more rational basis the Table should not be used for the assessment. Incidentally the Table is not meant for the design of the *floor areas* of buildings.

## ND1.11 Measurement of Distances

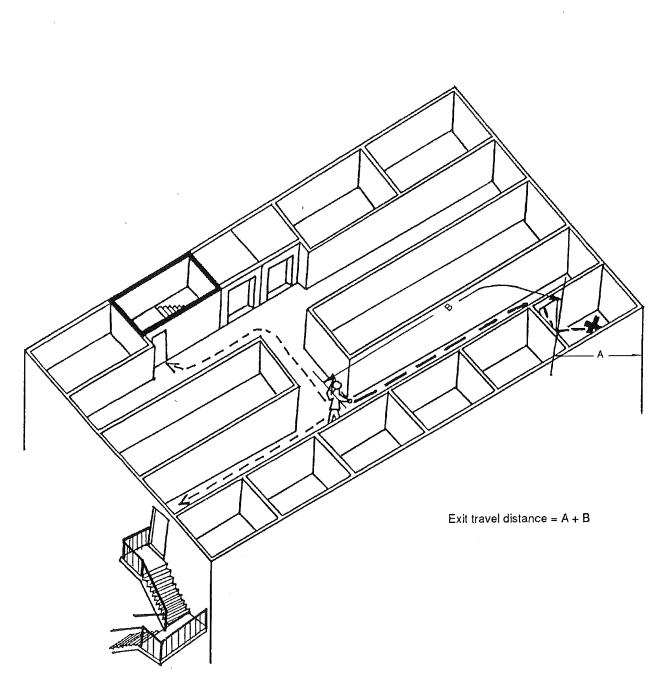
In order to measure the distances mentioned in clauses ND1.3, ND1.4, and ND1.7 without confusion this clause states the meaning of the term "nearest part of an *exit*". This term is used in clause ND1.12.

## ND1.12 Method of Measurement

This clause specifies the routes along which the *exit* travel distances have to be measured. The attached sketches illustrate the method of measurement.



Sketch ND1.12 (i) Example of the Measurement of Distance From Any Point on a Floor to a Single Exit



Note : This example does not apply to sole-occupancy units in Class 2

Sketch ND1.12 (ii) Example of the Measurement of Distance From Any Point on a Floor to the Point From Which Travel in Different Directions to Two Required Exits is Available

## PART ND2 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

## ND2.1 Application of Part

The requirements of this part do not apply to Class 2 except for clauses ND2.6 and ND2.9.

## ND2.2 Stairways and Ramps

This clause provides precautions to prevent the outbreak of fire in stairways and ramps. Apart from making them unsafe in the evacuation of the occupants, a fire in a stairway or ramp can very quickly spread to floors where any doorway leading to the *exit* has been left inadvertently open.

ς,

÷

## ND2.3 Installations in Exits and Paths of Travel ND2.4 Width of Stairways

These 2 clauses aim to ensure that the *exit* is kept free of any risk of occurrence of fire within it and is free of obstructions for the rapid evacuation of occupants in an emergency. The reasoning behind sub-clause ND2.4(b) is that users of the stairway feel more safe in walking close to handrails. Therefore a very wide stairway without intermediate balustrades or handrails will generally not be useful over its full width. While preparing the commentary a few mistakes were noticed in the Code. The corrections pertaining to these mistakes are given below. It will be appropriate to issue these formally when bringing the Code into use after the passing of the enabling legislation.

## INTRODUCTION

In the middle paragraph under the sub-heading "Layout of the Code", the reference to "and 10" should be deleted.

## PART A1 Clause A1.1 Definitions

Automatic The second line of this definition is not relevant. It should be deleted except for the last word "or".

**Effective Height** The reference to a "lift" in the third line of the definition should be deleted.

**Non-combustible** The inclusion of perforated gypsum lath with normal paper finish at (b) (ii) is not appropriate. Please delete this item and renumber the items from (i) to (iv).

**Open Space** The words "complying with ND2.12" should be deleted from the second line.

Site The definition as given can lead to disputes. It needs to also include the land in the vicinity of the building in order to erect it, make continued use of it and eventually to demolish it. Therefore a more appropriate definition would be as follows : "The part of the allotment of land *required* for the erection, continued use, any alteration or addition, and demolition of a building."

## SEPARATORS FOR ALL SECTIONS BEGINNING WITH SECTION DC

For Sections DC to DG the reference to "AND 10" should be deleted. For Sections NC to NG the reference to "Class 2 to 9" should read "Class 2 and 3".

## PART NC3 Clause 3.8

The reference in the heading to "and 3" and in the subclause (a) to "or 3" should be deleted.

## SPECIFICATION NC1.1 Para 2.1 (a) (i)

The "not" after "a FRL of" should be deleted.

## PART NE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS Clause NEP1.1

The words "fire compartments" at item (c) should be in italics.

The words "for automatic operation" in the second line under sub-heading "Fire and Smoke Alarms" should be deleted.

## TAKI MO TE FAUGA O NA FALE BUILDING CODE

## CONTENTS

## PREFACE

2

٢

٩

1

1

A.

3

۰**ډ** 

÷

١

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

## INTRODUCTION

## A GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A1 Interpretation
- A2 Acceptance of Design and Construction
- A3 Classification of Buildings and Structures
- A4 United Buildings
- **B** STRUCTURE

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

B1 Structural Provisions

## DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS

## DC FIRE RESISTANCE

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability

## DD ACCESS AND EGRESS

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DD1 Construction of Exits

## DE ELECTRICITY

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DE1 Electrical Safety DE2 Amenity

DF HEALTH AND AMENITY

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing
- DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities
- DF3 Room Sizes and Heights
- DF4 Light and Ventilation
- DF5 Watersupply Plumbing
- DF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- DF7 Roof Drainage

## DG ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DG1 Minor Structures and Components DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues
- •

## PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS

## NC FIRE RESISTANCE

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NC1 Fire Resistance and Stability
- NC2 Compartmentation and Separation
- NC3 Protection of Openings

## ND ACCESS AND EGRESS

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- ND1 Provision for Escape
- ND2 Construction of Exits
- ND3 Access for People with Disabilities
- NE SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NE1 Fire Fighting Equipment
- NE2 Smoke Control
- NE3 Electricity

## NF HEALTH AND AMENITY

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NF1 Damp and Weatherproofing
- NF2 Sanitary Facilities
- NF3 Room Sizes
- NF4 Light and Ventilation
- NF5 Watersupply Plumbing
- NF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- NF7 Roof Drainage

## NG ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NG1 Minor Structures and Components
- NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

## CONTENTS

.

## PREFACE

The work on the National Building Code was begun in response to the threat of death and destruction that cyclones pose for the people of Niue every summer. The Government of Niue readily agreed to participate in the Project. A Building Advisory Committee was formed to work with the Project office. The composition of the Committee reflected the widespread support that it had for its work. The members represented a wide range of interests and all of them worked on a voluntary basis. The principal aim of the Project was to incorporate in the Code appropriate preventive measures which will help to resist the harmful effects of cyclones, fires and other such natural hazards and forces. While achieving this aim it was also necessary to ensure that the provisions of the Code were within the economic and technical means of the country.

The Project was set up by the Australian Government in March 1988. Since then the Project staff have tried to work closely with the Committee. The lack of regular airline operations to Niue had prevented more frequent contacts between the Project office and the Committee. The first draft of the Code was revised and the revision made available to the members of the Committee for their comments. The feed-back from the members especially during personal meetings with them was of very great help in the preparation of this edition. Several overseas experts freely gave their time to help with crucial advice on specific aspects of the Code. A few dedicated members of the Committee worked very closely with the Project staff to oversee the detailed final work and thus ensure that the Code would technically and economically be relevant for use in Niue.

The actual use of the Code will in course of time reveal the need for some modification or the other. It is only such periodic examination and suitable revision which will keep it up-to-date and relevant. The involvement of the members of the Committee in the preparation of the Code will in the meantime ensure that in a real sense it is the National Building Code of Niue.

Suva

£

September 1990

i f

Kris Ayyar Project Manager Pacific Building Standards Project

## PREFACE

·

.

· · ·

.

.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

A very large number of people and the organisations that they represent have contributed to the successful completion of the Code. It is not possible to acknowledge their help individually. Among those who were especially generous were:-

## IN NIUE

3

ь.

ġ.,

1

Terry Chapman, Secretary to the Government took an active interest in the work and was keen for the early implementation of the Code.

Henry Eveni, Project Manager (Housing) who organised the distribution of the draft documents and arranged for a one-day public seminar to discuss the Code. Henry was very helpful in sending us the feedback from the members of the Building Advisory Committee.

Toe Tongatule, Director of Works took an active interest in the work.

Harkai Pihigia, Programming/Planning Officer PWD took a leading role during the seminar and asked many penetrating questions. Harkai also furnished us with the details of locally available timber.

Arthur Waite, Deputy Director of Works gave us the benefit of his vast experience and helped to shape the Code to the needs of Niue.

Kathy Stickland, Executive Officer (External Affairs) was very helpful with all the administrative arrangements in Niue.

Maui Jackson, Private Builder took an active role during the seminar and represented the interests of the private sector.

Bill Vakaafi, Personal Assistant to the Secretary to the Government was very helpful with the administrative arrangements and took a keen interest in the technical discussions.

Poni Kapaga, Technical Advisor (Building) PWD actively contributed to the technical debate during the seminar.

Jack Lakatani, Acting Building Superintendent, Alan Tano, Draftsman (Design/Planning) and Deve Talagi, Survey Technician (Design/Planning) contributed to the work with their critical questions during the seminar.

Mike Jones, Plumbing Supervisor and HU Tafea, Principal Health Inspector furnished information on plumbing and sanitation requirements.

## IN FIJI

Stefan Ali of Datacom gave excellent support service to our computer system.

Robert Austin, Printing and Design Consultant gave us professional advice on the cover design and printing of the Code.

## IN AUSTRALIA

Robert Hogg, Director, Australian Uniform Building Regulations Co-ordinating Council and the members of its Executive Committee showed their great generosity in exempting us from the copyright requirements of the Building Code of Australia.

Dr George Walker, formerly Associate Professor of Civil Engineering at the James Cook University and currently Director National Building Technology Centre, Sydney was of immense help.

Stewart Horwood, Chief Executive, Peter Walsh, Director Standards and other officers of the Standards Association of Australia were very helpful with the supply of Australian Standards and relevant explanations.

Geoff Anderson, Associate Director, and Hugh Knox, Manager Regulations Accreditations and Standards of the National Building Technology Centre helped with the supply of references and technical advice.

Lawrence Reddaway, Director Irwin Johnston & Partners Melbourne and Dr Vaughan Beck Principal Lecturer Footscray Institute of Technology gave invaluable advice on fire engineering that gave me ideas for cost - reducing changes without any material reduction in life-safety.

Paul Smith, Assistant Director, Leo Blumkie Manager Building Services and Ron de Veer, Referee of the Queensland Department of Local Government, helped with their comments and explanations of building control practices in Queensland.

## IN NEW ZEALAND

John Hunt, Executive Director, and Boyd Dunlop, Executive Officer of the Building Industry Commission. They provided valuable advice and kept us informed of their work on the production of the New Zealand Building Code. I have borrowed ideas and concepts from their work and reproduced with suitable alterations two diagrams and their acceptable solution for stairways and ramps in the Code.

Russell Cooney, Manager Building Industry Development, and Andrew King, Leader Structural Engineering Group of the Building Research Association of New Zealand. Russell and Andrew gave willingly of their time and expertise especially in the area of designing against earthquake. They also supplied us with valuable reference documents.

Denys Pinfold and Denis Ferrier, the past and present Directors and other officers of the Standards Association of New Zealand, helped with the supply of New Zealand Standards and useful explanations.

John Fraser, Manager, Fire Protection Inspection Services Limited, Auckland gave us a lot of practical advice.

Dr Steve Reid, New Zealand Meteorological Services helped us with the supply of processed meteorological data.

## IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

0

Ŕ

ġ

Ø.

a.

ų

往来

•

ħ.

(t

ų

位

睛

4

James Bihr, President International Conference of Building Officials, supplied us with their Uniform Building Code and other related documents which were very useful references.

The Council of American Building Officials: I have reproduced four diagrams after suitable alterations from their publication One and Two Family Dwelling Code in Section DF of the Code.

Elliot Stephenson, Structural and Fire Protection Engineer, spent considerable time with me during his holiday in Fiji and gave valuable advice on the Code.

## AUSTRALIAN INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT ASSISTANCE BUREAU

Sean Forster and Bruce Jones, the past and present Second Secretaries and Ross Sanson, Senior Clerical Officer (Aid), were very helpful in making the required administrative arrangements in Niue and New Zealand.

Roger Dickson, Engineer with the Pacific Regional Team Sydney, was extremely helpful and acted as a bridge between me and the AIDAB administration.

Mark Latham and Graham Nicholls, past and present Development Aid Counsellors at the Australian Embassy, Suva have supported the work with all the resource at their command.

Cathy Bennett, Keith Joyce and Greg Brooke in Suva, and Arthur Burch, Lynn Pieper and Chris Wheeler in Canberra were all extremely helpful in sorting out the administrative tangles that enveloped the project from time to time. Keith and Greg in particular were associated with the project during its stormiest days and helped to steer it through the reef.

Last but not least were the team in the project office. No words can express my gratitude for their sincerity and dedication. Most directly associated with the specific work on the Code were Saras Prasad for the bulk of the time and Sashi Lata Pal all of the time. In particular I owe Sashi a great deal for her excellent contribution. Wati Ledua, Raveena Dutt and Michael Arun Shankar helped with the many administrative tasks in the office, in particular the production of hundreds of bound copies of the several draft documents. Rohit Singh, Deputy Project Manager and Hem Rao, Project Engineer, were my sounding board for testing the practicality of many of the Code provisions.

Kris Ayyar

.

.

## INTRODUCTION

## About this Code

ŧ

st.

1

đ

4

ŝ

90

ţĒ.

ιŧ.

1 E

The basic objective of the Code is to ensure that acceptable standards of structural sufficiency, fire safety, health and amenity, are maintained for the benefit of the community now and in the future.

The requirements included in this Code are intended to extend no further than is necessary in the public interest, to be cost effective, not needlessly onerous in their application, and easily understood.

## What is in the Code?

The Code sets down the Performance Requirements and corresponding Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions which apply to the construction of buildings for all classes of occupancy.

It must be recognised that a building code cannot cover every issue concerned with the design and construction of buildings. In the case of innovative, complex or unusually hazardous building proposals, or other building work beyond the scope of the Code, legislation may provide for other suitable action.

Where appropriate the Code allows for variations in climate and geological conditions.

The Code covers those aspects of buildings which are controlled by Approval Authorities such as structure, fire resistance, access and egress, fire-fighting equipment, and certain aspects of health and amenity.

## Performance Requirements

These are described in terms which would allow considerable scope for innovation and the development of new materials and methods of construction. The Requirements are in some cases separated into objectives and the required performance.

**Objectives** are broad statements of intent and are included at the beginning of each Section to identify the objectives that the provisions of the Section are intended to achieve. They are the basic concepts which apply generally to all buildings and structures.

**Required Performance** gives the fundamental requirements which will satisfy the objectives and are expressed in performance terms. Accreditation certificates, test reports, detailed calculations or other documentary evidence may be used as evidence that a particular material, design or construction method meets the performance requirements of this Code.

## **Deemed-to-satisfy Provisions**

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions have been drafted in sufficiently general terms to allow some flexibility without increasing the need to use administrative discretion. In the absence of national Standards for design, construction and materials, the Standards produced by the Standards Association of Australia and New Zealand have been called up. Detailed specifications have been given where necessary.

## **Professional Certification**

The Code allows for certificates from professional consultants to be used as evidence of compliance with particular requirements or standards.

The enabling legislation will determine the extent of the use of professional certification and the procedures for the submission of certificates, reports or other documentation to Approval Authorities as evidence of compliance.

## Layout of the Code

The numbering of Sections and Parts has beenmade on an alpha-numeric system for ease of reference. It provides flexibility to accommodate future additions or deletions and the future consolidation of building regulations presently contained in other legislation, without undue disruption to the layout.

Other than for common provisions contained in Sections A and B, the Code is divided into two areas - one which covers Class 1 and 10 buildings, and the other which covers all other Classes of buildings.

The pages containing the Performance Requirements are identified by the use of coloured paper. The Specifications relating to the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions have also been printed on coloured paper.

## Administrative Arrangements

This Code is brought into effect by enabling building control legislation which prescribes or "calls up" the technical requirements which have to be satisfied in order to gain approval.

The enabling legislation consists of an Act of Parliament and subordinate legislation. It empowers the Administration to regulate certain aspects of the building process and contains the necessary administrative provisions for the work of the Approval Authority. The legislation also imposes responsibilities on the authorities or other persons or bodies, and describes particular administrative procedures.

## INTRODUCTION

The following administrative matters are covered in the enabling or subordinate legislation -

- Plan submission and approval procedures.
- . Issue of building permits.
- . Inspections during and after construction.
- . Provision of evidentiary certificates.
- . Issue of certificates of occupancy or compliance.
- . Accreditation or approval of materials or components.
- . Review and enforcement of standards.
- . Fees and charges.

## Administrative discretion

The Code is drafted with the object of reducing the need for the Approval Authority to make discretionary decisions.

However, in many cases it is not possible to draft a provision in purely technical terms and an informed judgement is required on the standard which would be suitable in particular circumstances.

Accordingly, in a number of clauses, the Code requires a particular material or construction method to be "suitable", meaning fit in all relevant respects for its intended purpose and use.

The Approval Authority responsible for the enforcement of building controls retains the right to question "suitability" and differences of opinion are open to appeal.

# NATIONAL BUILDING 1990 ALL BUILDINGS

## **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

- A1 Interpretation
- A2 Acceptance of Design and Construction
- A3 Classification of Buildings and Structures
- A4 United Buildings

.

GENERAL PROVISIONS

12

12 ŧ 14

,

## CONTENTS

it	Part		Part	
ы д -1	A1	Interpretation	A3	Classification of Buildings and Structures
6	A1.1	Definitions	A3.1	Principles of classification
4 .e	A1.2	Adoption of Standards and other references	A3.2	Classifications
il. it	A1.3	Referenced Standards. etc	A3.3	Multiple classification
1	A1.4	Differences between referenced documents and this Code	<b>A</b> 4	United Buildings
fť	A1.5	Mandatory Provisions	A4.1	When buildings are united
ी .र व	A2	Acceptance of Design And Construction	A4.2	Alterations in a united building
4	A2.1	Suitability of materials	Specification	
1 1	A2.2	Evidence of suitability	Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference	
. (	A2.3	Fire-resistance of building elements	Specification A2.3	
ħ	A2.4	Early Fire Hazard Indices	Fire-Resistance of Building Elements	
શ ત ્ર			Specifica Early Fir	ation A2.4 e Hazard Test for Assemblies

.

#### INTERPRETATION

#### A1.1 Definitions

.t ٠s

: } 13

R

đ

18

16

đ,

.6

ų,

đ,

Ą

đ

Q.

.1

t.

٠t 4

١

ę.

5

1

 $\mathcal{H}$ 

đ

H

Q.

Q,

١£. ¥.

ł

ł,

Į

ŧ

A ł Some of the words and phrases used in the Code have specific defined meanings. Wherever such meaning is intended the words and phrases are printed in italics. The defined meanings are:

 $\psi_{i}$ Alteration, in relation to a building, includes an addition or extension to a building.

Assembly building a building where people may assemble for -

civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes; (a)

- educational purposes in a school, early childhood (b) centre, preschool, or the like;
- entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes; or (c)
- (d) transit purposes.

Automatic applied to a fire door, smoke door, fire shutter, smoke and-heat vent, sprinkler system, alarm system or the like, means designed to operate when activated by a heat, smoke or fire sensing device.

Certificate of Accreditation a certificate acceptable to the Approval Authority stating that the properties and performance of a building material or method of construction or design fulfil specific requirements of this Code.

#### Combustible -

- applied to a material means combustible under (a) AS1530.1
- applied to construction or part of a building means (b) constructed wholly or in part of combustible materials.

(See definition of non-combustible)

Common Wall a wall that is common to adjoining buildings.

Drain a line of pipes to carry sewage or trade waste, located within the property boundary, laid above or below ground, and includes all fittings and equipment such as inspection openings, traps and gullies.

It is a branch drain if it is intended to receive the discharge from fixture discharge pipes. Branch drains join a main drain.

The main drain collects the waste water from branch drains and/or from fixture discharge pipes and conveys them to the disposal system.

Early Childhood Centre a preschool, kindergarten or child-minding centre.

Effective height the height to the floor of the topmost storey (excluding the topmost storey if it contains only heating, ventilating, lift or other equipment, water tanks or similar service units) from the floor of the highest storey providing egress to a road or open space. The road or open space must be capable of providing unobstructed access to emergency vehicles.

The effective height of a stepped or terraced building is the maximum effective height of any segment of the building.

Exit:

- Any, or any combination of the following if they (a) provide egress to a road or open space:
  - An internal or external stairway. (i)
  - A ramp complying with Section ND. (ii)
  - (iii) A fire-isolated passageway.
  - (iv) A doorway opening to a road or open space.
- A horizontal exit or a fire-isolated passageway (b) leading to a horizontal exit.

External Wall an outer wall of a building which is not a common wall.

Fire Compartment a part of a building which is separated from the remainder in accordance with this Code to resist the spread of fire and smoke.

Fire-protective Covering inert material applied in such a manner that it protects other materials or building elements from the damaging effects of fire. Acceptable materials are:-

- 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard; (a)
- 12 mm cellulose fibre reinforced sheeting; (b)
- 12 mm mesh-reinforced fibrous plaster in which the (C) mesh is 13 mm x 13 mm x 0.7 mm welded wire located not more than 6 mm from the exposed face; or
- other material not less fire-protective than 13 mm (d) fire-protective grade plasterboard,

fixed in accordance with the normal trade practice for a fireprotective covering.

Fire-resistance Level (FRL) the grading periods in minutes determined in accordance with Specification A2.3, for-

structural adequacy; (a)

#### **A1** INTERPRETATION

- (b) integrity; and
- (c) insulation,

and expressed in that order.

Fire-resisting Construction one of the Types of construction referred to in Part NC1.

**Fire-separated Section** a part of a building which is separated from the remainder by *fire walls* in accordance with Part NC2 and thereby regarded as a separate building.

#### Fire-source Feature -

- (a) the far boundary of a road adjoining the allotment;
- (b) a side or rear boundary of the allotment; or
- (c) an *external wall* of another building on the allotment.

**Fire Wall** a wall that divides a *storey* or building to resist the spread of fire and smoke and has the FRL *required* under Specification NC1.1.

**Fixture Unit** a unit of measure based on the rate of discharge, time of operation and frequency and use of a sanitary fixture, that denotes the hydraulic load contributed by that fixture to the sanitary plumbing system.

Flammability Index the index number determined under AS 1530.2.

#### Floor Area -

- (a) in relation to a storey the area of that storey measured over the enclosing walls (if any) and that part of any common wall located within the allotment; and
- (b) in relation to a room the area of the room measured within the finished surfaces of the walls, and includes the area occupied by any cupboard or other built-in furniture, fixture or fitting.

Habitable Room a room used for normal domestic activities, and -

- includes a bedroom, living room, lounge room, music room, television room, kitchen, dining room, sewing room, study, playroom, family room and sunroom; but
- (b) excludes a bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, photographic darkroom, clothes-drying room, and other spaces of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.

#### Health-care Building -

 (a) a nursing home, hospital, convalescent home, infirmary or similar institution or home for sick or disabled persons needing full-time nursing care; or

- (b) a clinic or day surgery unit where -
  - prescribed surgical procedures ar performed on people who do not requir overnight care as in-patients in a hospita and
  - the surgical procedures include a potentiε requirement for general anaesthesia, majo regional anaesthesia or intravenous sedation.

Horizontal Exit a required doorway through a required fire wall separating two portions of a building with approximately the same floor level so as to establish ar area of refuge affording safety from fire and/or smoke in the portion from which the escape is made.

**Insulation**, in relation to a FRL, means the ability to maintain a temperature on the surface not exposed to the furnace below the limits specified in AS 1530.4.

Integrity, in relation to a FRL, means the ability to resist the passage of flames and hot gases specified in AS 1530.4.

Internal Wall excludes a common wall or a party wall .

**Junction** a sanitary fitting used to connect one or more branch pipes or channels to a main pipe or channel.

A square *junction* connects the main pipe at right angles and has an airtight removable cap to facilitate inspection and cleaning.

An inspection branch is a *junction* with an airtight removable cap to facilitate inspection and cleaning.

Loadbearing intended to resist forces and moments additional to those due to its own weight.

#### Non-combustible -

- (a) applied to a material means not *combustible* except that the material may have a *combustible* surface finish if the finish is not more than 1 mm thick and the *Spread-of-Flame Index* of the assemblage is 0;
- (b) applied to construction or part of a building means constructed of *non-combustible* material on all exposed faces.
  - The following materials though *combustible* or containing *combustible* fibres may be used wherever *non-combustible* materials are *required*:-
    - (i) plasterboard
    - (ii) perforated gypsum lath with a normal paper finish
    - (iii) fibrous plaster sheet conforming to AS 2185
    - (iv) cellulose fibre cement sheeting

#### INTERPRETATION

iŧ

R

đ

ť

 $\mathcal{A}$ 

ŧ,

đ

d

t

a

ţ

ví.

M

it.

S.

Ł

é

4

(

1

ł

(v) any other material not less fire-protective than any of the materials from (i) to (iv)

**Open Garage** a carport or garage with 2 or more sides substantially open.

**Open Space** a space on an allotment, or a roof or similar part of a building complying with ND2.12, open to the sky and connected directly with a public road.

**Open Spectator Stand** a tiered stand substantially open at the front.

**Panel Wall** a non-*loadbearing external wall*, in frame or similar construction, that is wholly supported at each *storey*.

**Pitch** the maximum angle to the horizontal of a line connecting the nosings of stair treads in a single straight flight of a stairway.

Private Garage - any garage of a Class 1 building.

Professional Consultant a person with appropriate experience in the relevant field, being -

- (a) if legislation so requires a registered *professional consultant* in the relevant discipline; or
- (b) a Corporate Member of a recognized professional institution.

Public Corridor an enclosed corridor, hallway or the like which -

- (a) serves as a means of egress from 2 or more *sole* occupancy units to a required exit from the storey concerned; or
- (b) is *required* to be provided as a means of egress from any portion of a *storey* to a *required exit*.

#### Registered Testing Authority -

- (a) National Building Technology Centre P O Box 30 CHATSWOOD NSW 2067 AUSTRALIA;
- (b) Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation; Division of Building Research P O Box 56 HIGHETT VIC 3190 AUSTRALIA;
- An organisation registered by the National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA) to test in the relevant field;
- (d) Building Research Association of New Zealand Private Bag PORIRUA NEW ZEALAND;
- (e) Testing laboratories registered by the Testing Laboratory Registration Council (TELARC) of New

Zealand to test in the relevant field;

- (f) An organisation recognized by NATA or TELARC through a mutual recognition agreement;
- (g) Fire Insurers Research and Testing Organisation Melrose Avenue BOREHAMWOOD LONDON (UK);
- (h) National Institute of Standards and Technology GAITHERSBURG, MD 20899
   USA;
- (i) Underwirters Laboratories Incorporated 333 Pfingsten Road NORTHBROOK, IL 60062 USA; or
- (j) National Research Council Division of Building Research 75 Boul De Mortagne Boucherville Quebec CANADA

**Repairs** action taken to restore the structural strength or appearance of a building without making any addition or extension to it.

Required required by this Code.

**Resistance to the incipient spread of Fire** in relation to aceiling membrane, means the ability of a ceiling membrane to insulate the space between the ceiling and roof, or ceiling and floor above, to limit the temperature rise of *combustibles* in this space during the *Standard Fire Test* to 180°C.

**Rise**, in *storeys*, means the greatest number of *storeys* calculated in accordance with NC1.2 at any part of the *external walls* of the building -

- (a) above the finished ground next to that part; or
- (b) if part of the *external wall* is on the boundary of the allotment, above the natural ground level at the relevant part of the boundary.

Sanitary Compartment a room or space containing a toilet fixture, closet pan, soil pan, chemical toilet, or the like.

**Sarking-type** Material a material such as a reflective foil or other flexible membrane of a type normally used for a purpose such as water-proofing, vapour proofing or thermal reflectance.

**School** includes a primary or secondary *school*, college, university or similar educational establishment.

Self-closing, applied to a door or *window* means equipped with a devise which returns the door or *window* to the fully closed and latched position immediately after each manual opening.

#### A1 INTERPRETATION

Service Station a garage which is not a *private garage* and is for the servicing of vehicles, other than only washing, cleaning or polishing.

Sewage waterborne human waste from domestic and commercial premises including faeces and urine, and waste from kitchens, showers, baths, domestic laundries etc.

Site the part of the allotment of land on which a building stands or is to be erected.

Smoke-Developed Index the index number for smoke developed under AS 1530.3.

**Soll Fixture** a water closet pan, urinal, sanitary napkin disposal unit, slop hopper, bed pan washer or autopsy table.

Soil Pipe a pipe which conveys discharge from soil fixtures.

**Sole-occupancy Unit** a room or other portion of a building for occupation by one owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier to the exclusion of any other owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier.

Spread-of-Flame Index the index number for spread of flame under AS 1530.3.

**Stack** a vertical *drain* including offsets and extending to more than one *storey*.

Standard Fire Test the Fire-resistance Test of Structures under AS 1530.4.

Storey a space within a building which is situated between one floor level and the floor level next above, or if there is no floor above, the ceiling or roof above, but not -

- (a) a stairway or meter room;
- (b) a bathroom, shower room, water closet, or other sanitary compartment; or
- (c) a combination of the above.

**Structural Adequacy**, in relation to a FRL means the ability to maintain stability and adequate *loadbearing* capacity under AS1530.4.

Structural Member a component or part of an assembly which provides vertical or lateral support to a building or structure.

Sweep Junction a long radius bend entering a main pipe at 45° or a 45° junction fitted with a 45° bend.

Trade Waste waterborne waste from business, trade or manufacturing process containing predominantly non-human waste, but not unpolluted water.

Ward Area that portion of a *storey* of a Class 9a building for residing patients and includes areas for sleeping, recreation and sanitary facilities, and nurses stations.

Waste Fixture a sanitary fixture other than a *soil fixture*. Examples are: basins, bidets, kitchen sink, laundry trough etc.

Waste Pipe a pipe which conveys the discharge from waste fixtures.

Waste Water dissolved and suspended waterborne waste which may consist of *sewage* and/or *trade waste*..

**Window** includes a roof light, glass panel, glass brick, glass louvre, glazed sash, glazed door, or other device which transmits natural light directly from outside a building to the room concerned when in the closed position.

#### A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other references

The adoption of a Standard, rule, specification or provision included in any document issued by the Standards Association of Australia, Standards Association of New Zealand or other body, does not include a provision -

- (a) specifying the respective rights, responsibilities or obligations between that body and any manufacturer, supplier or purchaser;
- (b) specifying the responsibilities of any tradesman or other building operative, architect, engineer, authority, or other person or body;
- (c) requiring the submission for approval of any material, building component, form or method of construction, to any person, authority or other body;
- (d) specifying that a material, building component, form or method of construction, must be submitted to the Standards Association of Australia, Standards Association of New Zealand or other body or a committee of either Association for expression of opinion; or
- (e) permitting a departure from the Standard, rule, specification or provision at the sole discretion of the manufacturer or purchaser, or by arrangement or agreement between the manufacturer and purchaser.

#### INTERPRETATION

ii,

Э

Q,

st.

:ť

ał.

t

ł

.τ

ţ

63 1

ť.

#### A1.3 Referenced Standards, Etc.

A reference to a document under A1.2 refers to the latest edition or issue, together with any amendment, listed in Specification A1.3 and only so much as is relevant in the context in which the document is quoted.

#### A1.4 Differences between referenced documents and this Code

This Code overrules in any difference arising between it and any Standard, rule, specification or provision in a document listed in Specification A1.3. Further, references in this Code to any Standard or Code of Practice issued by the Standards Association of Australia or of New Zealand or such other body, exclude the need for:

- (a) compliance with NZS 1900 wherever it is quoted in any standard;
- (b) compliance with any laws and regulations that are not of this country; and

(c) recognition of the meaning of "Engineer".

Also, references to "FRR" in Standards issued by the Standards Association of New Zealand mean "*Fire resistance level*" as defined in this Code.

#### A1.5 Mandatory provisions

- (a) The following provisions of the Code are mandatory:
  - (i) all provisions of Section A; and
  - (ii) the Performance Requirements stated at the beginning of all the other Sections.
- (b) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the Code are one means of satisfying the Performance Requirements. The Performance Requirements can also be met by any other means. When this latter approach is taken, it must meet the final objectives and performance that would have been achieved had the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions been followed.

#### ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

#### A2.1 Suitability of materials

Every part of a building must be constructed in a manner which will achieve the required level of performance, using materials and methods that are not faulty or unsuitable for the purpose for which they are intended.

#### A2.2 Evidence of suitability

Evidence to support the use of a material, method, form of construction or design may be -

- (a) a report issued by a *Registered Testing Authority*, showing that the material or form of construction has been submitted to the tests listed in the report, and setting out the results of those tests and any other relevant information that demonstrates its suitability for use in the building;
- (b) a current Certificate of Accreditation;
- (c) a certificate from an appropriately qualified professional consultant which -
  - (i) certifies that a material, design or form of construction complies with the requirements of this Code; and
  - (ii) sets out the basis on which it is given and the extent to which relevant specifications, rules,

codes of practice or other publications have been relied upon; or

- (d) a Standards Mark Certificate issued by the Standards Association of Austrtalia or the Standards Association of New Zealand; or
- (e) any other form of documentary evidence that correctly describes the properties and performance of the material or form of construction and adequately demonstrates its suitability for use in the building,

and any copy of documentary evidence submitted under this Code, must be a complete copy of the original report or document.

#### A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements

The FRL of a *structural member* or other building element must be determined in accordance with Specification A2.3. Any relevant testing or certification must be by an appropriately qualified *professional consultant* or *Registered Testing Authority*.

#### A2.4 Early Fire Hazard Indices

The Early Fire Hazard Indices of a component or assembly must be determined in accordance with Specification A2.4.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

A3.1 Principles of classification

The classification of a building or part of a building is determined by the purposes for which it is designed, constructed or adapted to be used.

A3.2 Classifications

t

Ŷ:

£

Ĵ.

1

ŧ

1

X

ŝ

ţ.

ŝ

檺

ł

ŝ

Å

;

ł.

Buildings are classified as follows:-

**Class 1:** a residence which may comprise one or more buildings including any outbuildings such as a *private garage* which in association constitute-

- (a) a single dwelling-house; or
- (b) a dwelling-house used as a boarding-house, hostel, or the like, in which not more than 12 persons would ordinarily be resident; or
- (c) a building that contains -
  - 2 or more *sole-occupancy units* where no such unit is located one above the other; or
  - (ii) only 2 *sole-occupancy unit*s located one above the other,
  - and each unit has direct egress to a road or open space.

**Class 2:** a residential building, other than a building of Class 1, which is a common place of living for a number of unrelated persons, including -

(a) a boarding-house, guest house, hostel, or lodginghouse;

- (b) a residential part of an hotel or motel;
- (c) a residential part of a *school*;
- (d) accommodation for the aged, disabled or children; and
- (e) a residential part of a *health-care building* which accommodates members of staff.
- (f) a dwelling in a building that is Class 3 if it is the only dwelling in the building.

Class 3: All other buildings. Examples are -

- (a) office buildings
- (b) shops
- (c) restaurants, bars and other eating places
- (d) warehouse or storage buildings
- (e) health-care buildings
- (f) assembly buildings.

#### A3.3 Multiple classification

Each part of a building must be classified separately, and where parts have different purposes - if not more than 10% of the *floor area* of *storey* which is not a laboratory is used for a purpose which is a different classification, the classification applying to the major use may apply to the whole *storey*.

#### UNITED BUILDINGS

#### A4.1 When buildings are united

Two or more buildings adjoining each other are considered to form one united building if they -

- (a) are connected through openings in the walls dividing them; and
- (b) together comply with all the requirements of this Code as though they are a single building.

#### A4.2 Alterations in a united building

After any alteration or any other action -

- (a) a united building; or
- (b) each building forming part of a united building; or
- (c) each building if they cease to be connected through openings in the dividing walls,

must comply with all requirements for a single building.

#### STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

#### 1. Schedule of referenced documents

5

1

î

Å

۲ ۲

1

The Standards and other documents listed in Table 1 are referred to in this Code. In order to reduce possible confusion/conflict, the Standards produced by the Standards Association of Australia or by the Standards Association of New Zealand as seen to be specifically relevant, have been called up. However the Code users are free to use any suitable mix of Australian and New Zealand Standards provided care is taken to follow consistent technical principles and prevalent practices. Where the Standards from either Australia or New Zealand do not cover any specific area, the relevant Standards issued by the British Standards Institution or the American Society for Testing and Materials may be used.

No.	Title	Code Clause(s)
AS 1038	Methods for the analysis and testing of coal and coke	
Part 15	Fusibility of higher rank coal ash and coke ash	Spec NC3.10
AS 1170	Minimum design loads on structure (SAA Loading Code)	B1.2
Part 2	Wind forces	
AS 1428	Design rules for access by the disabled	ND3.2, ND3.3
Part 1	Regulatory requirements	
AS 1530	Methods of fire tests on building materials components and structures	A1.1
Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4	Combustibility test for materials Test for flammability of materials Test for early fire hazard properties of materials Fire-resistance tests on elements of building construction	Spec A2.4 Spec A2.4 Spec NC3.10
AS 1657	Rules for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders	ND2.11, DF6.11.5
AS 1664	Rules for the use of aluminium in structures (SAA Aluminium Structures Code)	B1.3
AS 1694	Code of practice for physical barriers used in the protection of buildings against subterranean termites	B1.3
AS 1720	Rules for the use of timber in structures (SAA Timber Engineering Code)	B1.3 Spec A2.3
AS 1736	Code of practice for pliable roof sarking	DF1.5, NF1.5

.

No.	Title	Code Clause(s)
AS 1860	Code of practice for the installation of particleboard flooring	B1.3
AS 1903	Reflective foil laminate	DF1.5, NF1.5
AS 1904	Code of practice for installation of reflective foil laminate in buildings	DF1.5, NF1.5
AS 2057	Soil treatment of buildings under construction for protection against subterranean termites	B1.3
AS 2159	Rules for the design and installation of piles (SAA Piling Code)	B1.3
AS 2327	Composite construction in structural Steel and concrete (SAA Composite Construction Code)	Spec A2.3,
AS 2870	Residential slabs and footings	
Part 1-XXXX	Construction	B1.3, DF1.9, NF1.9
AS 2904	Damp-proof courses and flashings	DF1.8, NF1.8
AS 3000	SAA Wiring rules	DE1.1, NE3.1.
NZS 3101	The design of concrete structures	B1.3
Parts 1 and 2		
NZS 3109	Specification for concrete construction	B1.3
NZS 3124	Specification for concrete construction for minor works	B1.3
NZS 3404	Code for design of steel structures (incorporating AS 1250)	B1.3
AS 3500	Plumbing and drainage Code	
Part 0	Glossary of terms	
Part 1	Water supply	DF5.2, DF5.3, NF5.2, NF5.3
Part 2	Sanitary plumbing and sanitary drainage	DF6.2, NF6.2
Part 4	Hot water supply systems	DF5.2, DF5.3, DF5.4, NF5.2, NF5.3, NF5.4
AS 3600	Concrete Structures	Spec A2.3
NZS 3603	Code of practice for timber design	B1.3

.

.

.

~

#### STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

۲ ۲

ï

۲ ۲

ð.

۲ ۲ ۹

× (

No.	Title	Code Clause(s)
AS 3700	Masonry in building (SAA Masonry Code)	Spec A2.3
AS 4100	Steel Structures	Spec A2.3
NZS 4121	Design for access and use of buildings and facilities by disabled persons	ND3.2, ND3.3
NZS 4122	Guide to approachability, accessibility and usability of buildings	ND3.2, ND3.3
NZS 4203	General structural design and design loadings for buildings -	B1.2
Part 1 Part 2 Part 3	General Dead and live loads Earthquake provisions	
NZS 4210	Code of practice for masonry buildings, materials and workmanship	SpecA2.3, B1.3
NZS 4223	Code of practice for glazing in buildings	B1.3
NZS 4229	Code of practice for masonry buildings not requiring specific design	B1.3
NZS 4230	Code of practice for the design of masonry structures	B1.3
NZS 4232	Performance criteria for fire resisting closures	Spec NC 3.2, NC3.6
NZS 4503	Hand operated fire fighting equipment	NE1.2
TR 440	NBTC Technical Record 440 - Guidelines for the testing and evaluation of Products for cyclone-prone areas	B1.3
AISC	Guidelines for assessment of fire resistance of structural steel members	Spec A2.3

#### FIRE-RESISTANCE OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

#### 1. Scope

This Specification sets out the procedure for determining the FRL of *structural members* and other building elements.

#### 2. Rating

.

A building element has a FRL if -

- (a) it is listed in, and compliant with Table 1 of this Specification;
- (b) it is identical with a prototype that has been submitted to the *Standard Fire Test* and the FRL achieved by the prototype is confirmed in a report from a *Registered Testing Authority* which -
  - describes the method and condition of test and the form of construction of the tested prototype in full; and
  - (ii) certifies that the application of restraint to the prototype complied with the *Standard Fire Test*;
- (c) it differs in only a minor degree from a prototype tested under (b) and the FRL attributed to the structural member is confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority which -
  - (i) certifies that the structural member is capable of achieving the FRL despite the minor departures from the tested prototype; and
  - describes the materials, construction and conditions of restraint which are necessary to achieve the FRL;
- (d) it is designed to achieve the FRL in accordance with-
  - AS 4100, AS 2327 and AISC Guidelines for Assessment of Fire Resistance of Structural Steel Members if it is a steel or composite structure; or
  - (ii) AS 3600 if it is a concrete structure; or
  - (iii) AS 1720.4 if it is a solid or gluedlaminated timber structure.
- (e) the FRL is determined by calculation based on the performance of a prototype in the *Standard Fire Test* and confirmed in a report in accordance with clause 3.

#### 3. FRLs determined by calculation

If the FRL of a building element is determined by calculation based on a tested prototype -

- (a) the building element may vary from the prototype in relation to -
  - (i) length and height if it is a wall;
  - (ii) height if it is a column;
  - (iii) span if it is a floor, roof or beam;
  - (iv) conditions of support; and
  - (v) to a minor degree, cross-section and components.
- (b) the report must demonstrate by calculation that the building element would achieve the FRL if it is subjected to the regime of the *Standard Fire Test* in relation to -
  - (i) structural adequacy (including deflection);
  - (ii) integrity; and
  - (iii) insulation; and
- (c) the calculations must take into account -
  - the temperature reached by the components of the prototype and their effects on strength and modulus of elasticity;
  - appropriate features of the building element such as support, restraint, cross-sectional profile, length, height, span, slenderness ratio, reinforcement, ratio of surface area to mass per unit length, and fire protection;
  - (iii) features of the prototype that influenced its performance in the Standard Fire Test although these features may not have been taken into account in the design for dead and live load;
  - (iv) features of the conditions of test, the manner of support and the position of the prototype during the test, that might not be reproduced in the building element if it is exposed to fire; and
  - (v) the design load of the building element in comparison with the tested prototype.

#### FIRE-RESISTANCE OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

#### 4. Interchangeable materials

ť

4

Ÿ

T

ŝ

ť

¥

Ć

۲

ł

Ę

ſ

γ ¶ Į

- (a) Concrete and plaster The FRL achieved with any material of Group A, B, C, D or E as an ingredient in concrete or plaster, applies equally when any other material of the same group is used in the same proportions:
  - Group A: Any portland cement.

Group B: Any lime.

- Group C: Any dense sand.
- Group D: Any dense calcareous aggregate, including any limestone or any calcareous gravel.

Group E: Any dense siliceous aggregate, including any basalt, diorite, dolerite, granite, granodiorite or trachyte.

(b) Perlite and vermiculite - The FRL achieved with either gypsum perlite plaster or gypsum-vermiculite plaster applies equally for both plasters.

#### 5. Columns covered with lightweight construction

- (a) Protection against injury If the fire-resisting covering of a steel column is lightweight construction -
  - the covering must be protected by metal or other suitable material if the column is liable to damage from the movement of vehicles, materials or equipment; and
  - (ii) the voids must be filled solid with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 1.2m above the floor to prevent indenting if the covering is not in continuous contact with the column; and
- (b) Sealing at floor level A plug of non-combustible material must seal all voids at each floor level, including voids between the column and its covering if -
  - a steel column extends through 2 or more storeys; and
  - (ii) the fire-resisting covering is not in continuous contact with the column.

BUILDING ELEMENT	THICKNESS OF PRINCIPAL MATERIAL (mm)	ANNEXURE REFERENCE Clause No.	
	60/60/60		
WALL		•	
Masonry -			
Concrete with material density in kg/m³ of -			
- 1600 or more	80	1,3,4,5	
- less than 1600	70	1,3,4,5	
Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel	50	1,7,9	
HOT-ROLLED STEEL CO (Including a fabricated col Fire protection of-	LUMN umn) exposed on no up to 4 sides:		
Concrete - Cast in-situ-			
- loadbearing	25	9,10	
non- <i>loadbearing -</i> - unplastered	25	9,10	
	25 25	9,10 1,7,9	
<ul> <li>unplastered</li> <li>plastered 13 mm</li> <li>Gypsum-perlite</li> <li>or Gypsum</li> </ul>			

. .

-----

ł

¢

「「「」「「」「」

イアブン りょう ショーショッチョ

() K

ć

TABLE 1 Continued FRLs DEEMED TO BE AC	HIEVED BY CERTAIN BUILDING ELE	EMENTS
BUILDING ELEMENT	THICKNESS OF PRINCIPAL MATERIAL (mm)	ANNEXURE REFERENCE Clause No.
	60/60/60	
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COI (including a fabricated colu and withcolumn spaces fille	mn) exposed on no up to all 4 sides	
Fire protection of -		
Solid concrete masonry	50	1, 3, 8, 9
HOT-ROLLED STEEL BEA (including an open-web jois	M st, girder, truss, etc) exposed on up to a	ll 4 sides :
Fire protection of -		I
Concrete - Cast in -situ-	25	9
Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum vermiculite plaster		
- sprayed to contour	25	1, 9
- sprayed on metal lath	20	1, 7, 9

.

#### **ANNEXURE TO TABLE 1**

#### 1. MORTAR, PLASTER AND PLASTER REINFORCEMENT

#### 1.1 Mortar for Masonry

Masonry units of concrete must be laid in cement mortar or composition mortar complying with the relevant provisions of NZS 4210.

#### 1.2 Gypsum-perlite and Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster

Gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied -

- (a) in either one or 2 coats each in the proportions of 1 m<sup>3</sup> of perlite or vermiculite to 640 kg of gypsum if the *required* thickness of the plaster is not more than 25 mm; and
- (b) in 2 coats if the *required* thickness is more than 25 mm, the first in the proportion of 1 m<sup>3</sup> of perlite or vermiculite to 800 kg of gypsum and the second in the proportion of 1 m<sup>3</sup> of perlite or vermiculite to 530 kg of gypsum.

#### 1.3 Plaster of Cement and Sand or Cement, Lime and Sand

Plaster prescribed in Table 1 must consist of -

- (a) cement and sand or cement, lime and sand; and
- (b) may be finished with gypsum, gypsum-sand, gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster or with lime putty.

#### **1.4 Plaster Reinforcement**

If plaster used as fire-protection on walls is more than 19 mm thick-

- (a) it must be reinforced with expanded metal lath that-
  - (i) has a mass per unit area of not less than 1.84 kg/m<sup>2</sup>;
  - (ii) has not fewer than 98 meshes/m; and
  - (iii) is protected against corrosion by galvanising or other suitable method; or
- (b) 13 mm x 13 mm x 0.710 mm galvanised steel wire mesh; and
- (c) the reinforcement must be securely fixed at a distance from the face of the wall of not less than 1/3 of the total thickness of the plaster.

#### 2. DIMENSIONS OF MASONRY

The thickness of concrete masonry is calculated as follows:-

#### 2.1 Solid Units

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units does not exceed 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the manufacturing dimensions of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

#### 2.2 Hollow Units

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units exceeds 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the equipment thicknesses of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

#### 2.3 Equivalent thickness

The equivalent thickness of a masonry unit is calculated by dividing the net volume by the area of one vertical face.

#### 2.4 Cavity Walls

The thickness of a cavity wall is the sum of the thicknesses of the leaves determined in accordance with 2.1 and/or 2.2 as appropriate.

#### 2.5 Cavity Walls of Different Materials

If the 2 leaves of a cavity wall are of units of different type, the thickness required is that listed for the less fire-resistant material (i.e. the greater thickness).

#### 3. SLENDERNESS RATIO OF MASONRY

#### 3.1 Maximum Value

The slenderness ratio of a masonry wall must not exceed the appropriate value in Table 3.1.

#### 3.2 Calculation

The slenderness ratio of a masonry wall is calculated in accordance with AS 3700. In the case of cavity walls it is calculated for each leaf separately. Each leaf must satisfy 3.1.

TABLE 3.1 MAXIMUM SLENDERNESS F	RATIOS FOR MASONRY WALLS
TYPE OF UNIT	FRL
	60/60/60
<b>Concrete</b> in which the basalt of the aggregate is	content
less than 45%	15
45% or more	20
Reinforced masonry - all type	l es of unit designed for-
axial forces and flexure-	20
flexure-with super-imposed axial forcesless than 5% of load capacity-	30

#### 4. PROTECTION TO MASONRY REINFORCEMENT

In a building element of reinforced masonry designed for fire-resistance, the distance from the surface of the element to the surface of the reinforcement must not be less than 30 mm for FRL 60/60/60.

#### 5. INCREASE IN THICKNESS BY PLASTERING

#### 5.1 General

The tabulated thicknesses are those of the principal material. They do not include the thickness of plaster which must be additional to the listed thickness of the material to which it is applied.

#### 5.2 Walls

If a wall of concrete masonry is plastered on both sides to an equal thickness, the thickness of the wall for the purposes of Table 1 (but not for the purposes of Table 3.1) may be increased by the following proportions of the thickness of the plaster on one side:

- For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density in excess of 1800 kg/m<sup>3</sup>: 100%
- (b) For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density between 1600 and 1800 kg/m<sup>3</sup> : 85%
- (c) For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density less than 1600 kg/m<sup>3</sup> : 75%

#### 6. CONCRETE SLABS BEAMS WALLS AND COLUMNS

The requirements to meet specific values of FRL are those contained in AS 3600. However for simple structures the following procedures may be adopted.

#### 6.1 Structural Adequacy Criterion

Table 6.1A gives the minimum dimensions for meeting specific levels of structural adequacy for -

(a)	Solid or hollow - core plain slabs	the clear cover to the longitudinal reinforcement or tendons. A slab is continuous if it is flexurally continuous along at least one edge under the imposed loads.
(b)	Ribbed slabs with - ribs spaced at not more than 1200 mm centre to centre	the minimum width of the rib and the clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons of the ribs. The slabs spanning the ribs may be treated as plain slabs as at (a).
(c)	Beams - The upper surface of the beams must be integral with a slab or protected by one	the minimum width of web (rectangular or uniformly tapering cross-section) and the clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons.

#### A2.3 FIRE-RESISTANCE OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

(d) Solid or hollowcore vertical walls the clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons. The effective thickness of the wall must be at least equal to that given in Table 6.3 for the FRL for the *insulation* criterion equal in period to the *required structural adequacy* criterion. In addition the slenderness ratio must not exceed the values given in Table 6.1B.

the minimum cross-sectional

- (e) Columns which are -
- . exposed on all sides of fire
- . built into or form part of a wall that does not have a fire separatingfunction
  - separatingfunction dimension and the clear cover to the reinforcement. built into or form part of a wall that has a lower value of
  - structural adequacy than *required* for the column; or built into and pro-
  - trude by a distance in excess of the value of the clear cover to the longitudinal reinforcement.

6.3 Insulation Criterion
This criterion is also relevant only for slabs and walls. It is
met by meeting the requirement for minimum effective
thickness as given in Table 6.3. The effective thickness of

6.2 Integrity Criterion

as appropriate.

met by meeting the requirement for minimum effective thickness as given in Table 6.3. The effective thickness of solid slabs and walls is the actual thickness. The effective thickness of hollow core slabs and walls is the value of the nett cross-sectional area divided by the width of the crosssection. With hollow core slabs and walls the thickness of concrete between voids and between any part of a void and the nearest surface must be not less than 25 mm or 20% of the effective thickness of the slab.

This criterion is relevant only for slabs and walls and not for

ribs, beams and columns. It is satisfied if the criteria for

structural adequacy and insulation are met for the period

equal to that required for the integrity of the slab or wall

	FRL (Minutes)	
	30	60
Plain Slabs Simply supported one-way, clear cover (mm) to		
. reinforcement	15	20
. tendons	20	25
Simply supported two way, clear cover (mm)to		
. reinforcement	10	15
. tendons	15	20

Page **A - 20** 

1

TABLE 6.1A Continued FRL - REQUIREMENTS FOR STRUCLTU	JRAL ADEQUA	ACY CRITE
BUILDING ELEMENT	FRL (Minutes)	
	30	60
Plain slabs continuous one-way and two-way, clear cover (mm) to		
. reinforcement . tendons	10 15	15 20
Ribs of plain slabs min. width x clear cover (mm) (mm)		
<ul> <li>simply supported one-way and two-way ribbed slabs</li> </ul>		
. reinforcement	80x15	110x25
. tendons	80x25	110x35
- continuous one way and two-way ribbed slabs min. width x clear cover (mm) (mm)		
, reinforcement	70x15	75x20
. tendons	70x25	75x30
Beams min. width of clear cover (mm) web (mm) x reinforcement or tendon		
Simply supported -		
. reinforcement	75x20	120x30 or 150x25 or 240x20
. tendons	75x25	120x35 or 150x30 or 240x25
Continuous -		
. reinforcement	75x20	120x20
. tendons	75x25	120x25

A2.3

ţ

4

.

BUILDING ELEMENT	FF	FRL (Minutes)	
	30	60	
Vertical Walls clear cover in mm for			
. to reinforcement	20	20	
. to tendons	30	30	
Note:- Vertical walls must also satisf	y the requirements	l of Table 6.1B	
Columns nin. cross-sectional dimension x clear cover mm) (mm)	150x10	200x20 or	
. to reinforcement	240x15 ·	300x25	

Ratio of design axial force to the product of gross cross-sectional ar and the characteristic co cylinder strength at 28 d	mpressive
0.0	35
0.005	20
0.03	15
0.10	10
Notes:	

.

.

~

TABLE 6.3					
MINIMUM EFFECTIVE THICKNESS FOR INSULATION					
FRL for <i>Insulation</i> criterion minutes	Effective thickness mm				
30	60				
60	80				

#### 7. GYPSUM-PERLITE OR GYPSUM-VERMICULITE PLASTER ON METAL LATH

#### 7.1 Walls

١

1

t

ł

١

ŧ

1

1

In walls fabricated of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel -

- the lath must be securely wired to each side of 19 mm x 0.44 kg/m steel channels (used as studs) spaced at not more than 400 mm centres; and
- (b) the gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied symmetrically to each exposed side of the lath.

#### 7.2 Columns

For the fire protection of steel columns with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath -

- (a) the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath;
- (b) the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres vertically to steel furring channels, and -
  - (i) if the plaster is to be 35 mm thick or more at least 12 mm clear of the column; or
  - (ii) if the plaster is to be less than 35 mm thick at least 6 mm clear of the column; or
- (c) the plaster may be applied to self-furring lath with furring dimples to hold it not less than 10 mm clear of the column.

#### 7.3 Beams

For the fire protection of steel beams with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath -

- (a) the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres to steel furring channels and at least 20 mm clear of the steel;
- (b) the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath.

#### 8. EXPOSURE OF COLUMNS AND BEAMS

#### 8.1 Columns

A column incorporated in or in contact on one or more sides with a wall of solid masonry or concrete at least 100 mm thick may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides.

#### 8.2 Beams

A beam, open-web joist, girder or truss in direct and continuous contact with a concrete slab or a hollow block floor or roof may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides.

#### 9. REINFORCEMENT FOR COLUMN AND BEAM PROTECTION

#### 9.1 Masonry

Concrete masonry for the protection of steel columns must have steel-wire or mesh reinforcement in every second course and lapped at the corners.

#### 9.2 Structural Concrete

If a steel column or a steel beam is to be protected with structural concrete -

- the concrete must be reinforced with steel-wire mesh or steel-wire binding placed about 20 mm from its outer surface; and
- (b) for concrete less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be -
  - (i) at least 3.15 mm in diameter; and
  - (ii) spaced at not more than 100 mm vertically ; or
- (c) for concrete not less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be either -

Page A - 23

#### A2.3 FIRE-RESISTANCE OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

- (i) of a diameter and spacing in accordance with (b); or
- (ii) at least 5 mm in diameter and spaced at not more than 150 mm vertically.

#### 9.3 Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster Sprayed to contour

- (a) If a steel column or steel beam is protected with either gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour and the construction falls within the limits of Table 9.3, the plaster must be reinforced with -
  - (i) expanded metal lath complying with 1.6; or
  - (ii) galvanised steel mesh complying with 1.6.
- (b) The reinforcement must be placed at a distance from the face of the plaster of at least 1/3 of the thickness of the plaster and must be securely fixed to the column or beam at intervals of not more than the relevant listing in Table 9.3.
- (c) For the purposes of Table 9.3 -
  - (i) "vertical" includes a surface at not more than 10° to the vertical;
  - (ii) "horizontal" includes a surface at not more than 10° to the horizontal; and
  - (iii) "underside" means the underside of any horizontal or non-vertical surface.

#### 10. THICKNESS OF COLUMN AND BEAM PROTECTION

#### 10.1 Measurement of Thickness

The thickness of the fire-protection to steel columns and steel beams (other than fire protection of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath or sprayed to contour) is to be measured from the face or edge of the steel, from the face of a splice plate or from the outer part of rivet or bolt, whichever is the closest to the outside of the fire-protective construction, except that-

- (a) if the thickness of the fire-protection is 40 mm or more, rivet heads may be disregarded;
- (b) if the thickness of the fire-protection is 50 mm or . more -
  - (i) any part of a bolt (other than a high-tensile bolt) may be disregarded; and
  - a column splice plate within 900 mm of the floor may encroach upon the fire protection by up to a 1/4 of the thickness of the fire protection; and
- (c) the flange of a column or beam may encroach by up to 12 mm upon the thickness of the fire protection at right angles to the web if-
  - the flange projects 65 mm or more from the web; and
  - the thickness of the edge of the flange (inclusive of any splice plate) is not more than 40 mm.

TABLE 9.3
REINFORCEMENT OF GYPSUM-PERLITE OR GYPSUM-VERMICULITE
PLASTER SPRAYED TO CONTOUR

SURFACE TO BE PROTECTED	REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED I F SMALLER DIMENSION OF SURFACE EXCEEDS (mm)	MAX SPACING OF FIXINGS OF THE MESH TO SURFACE (mm)	
Members with H or I cro			
Vertical- Non-vertical-	450 300	450 300	
Underside-	300	300	
Upperside of a horizontal surface-	Not required		
Members with other shap	mbers with other shapes		
Vertical Non-vertical-	Any size Any size	450 300	
Upperside of a horizontal surface-	Not required		

#### EARLY FIRE HAZARD TEST FOR ASSEMBLIES

#### 1. Scope

٢

This Specification sets out the procedures for determining the Early Fire Hazard Indices of components and assemblies. These tests classify building materials, their surface finishes and furnishings according to:-

(a) their tendencies to ignite;

- (b) their tendencies to spread flame;
- (c) the heat they develop once ignition has occurred; and
- (d) their tendencies to produce smoke.

#### 2. Form of test

Tests must be carried out in accordance with AS 1530.3 and AS 1530.4.

#### 3. Test specimens

Test specimens must incorporate -

- (a) all types of joints; and
- (b) all types of perforations, recesses or the like for pipes, light switches or other fittings, which are proposed to be used for the member or assembly of members in the building.

#### 4, Concession

Clause 3 does not apply to joints, perforations, recesses or the like that are larger than those in the proposed application and have already been tested in the particular form of construction concerned and found to comply with the conditions of test.

#### 5. Smaller specimen permitted

A testing laboratory may carry out the test at pilot scale if a specimen (which must be not less than 900 mm) will adequately represent the proposed construction in the building, but the results of that test do not apply to construction larger than limits defined by the laboratory conducting the pilot examination.

ł

#### A2.4 EARLY FIRE HAZARD TESTS FOR ASSEMBLIES

Ì

.

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

**ALL BUILDINGS** 



# STRUCTURE

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**B1** Structural Provisions

.

## **SECTION B**

### THIS SECTION APPLIES TO ALL BUILDINGS

STRUCTURE

#### CONTENTS

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Part

ł

)

١

B1 Structural Provisions

B1.1 General requirements

B1.2 Loads

B1.3 Construction deemed-to-satisfy

Part

B1.4 Allowable number of storeys

B1.5 Reinforcement and embedded steel to be protected

B1.6 Site mixed concrete and grout

.

.

.

.

· ·

.

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### OBJECTIVES

**BP1** A building must be designed and constructed to fulfil the following objectives:-

- (a) prevent death and injury to people from structural failure
- (b) avoid distress to occupants as a result of deflection vibration degradation or other similar causes
- (c) avoid damage to neighbouring property
- (d) the building must satisfy the intended use

#### REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

#### BP1.1 Design loads

l

5

\$

Buildings and their elements must be designed and constructed in order to prevent structural failure during the expected life of the building and to avoid unacceptable deflections and vibrations during the normal use of the building, resulting from -

- (a) combinations and frequency of all possible loads, dynamic responses and internal actions;
- (b) the properties of the materials used in the building; and
- (c) the foundation conditions.

**BP1.1.1** The design and construction must take into account the loads resulting from the following acting either singly or in possible combinations -

- (a) self weight
- (b) imposed loads
- (c) temperature variations
- (d) earth pressure
- (e) wind
- (f) earthquake
- (g) impact
- (h) explosion/implosion
- (i) fire
- (j) water and other liquids

- (k) fatigue resulting from fluctuating loads
- (l) differential displacement
- (m) any other expected loads
- BP1.1.2 The design and construction must allow for -
- (a) the consequences of failure;
- (b) the quality of workmanship available;
- (c) variations in material properties and site characteristics; and
- (d) want of accuracy in the methods used to predict the structural performance of the building.

#### **BP1.2 Site works**

- site works as necessary must be carried out to ensure the stability of the building site during the expected life of the building;
- (b) while carrying out site works any damage to existing structures or adjacent property must be avoided; and
- (c) alterations to the ground water level resulting from site works must not be allowed to affect the stability of any building.

#### **BP1.3** Design criteria

The following criteria must be satisfied -

- during the designed life of the building the probability of experiencing unacceptable deflections or vibrations of no more than 5%;
- (b) a risk of structural failure of no more than 0.1% within the designed life of the building;

#### **BP1.4 Allowable number of storeys**

The maximum number of storeys must not exceed 3.

#### BP1.5 Corrosion protection of reinforcement and embedded steel

All steel reinforcement and other embedded steel must be suitably protected against corrosion.

.

A 1111 18

-

.

.

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

#### STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

#### B1.1 General requirements

Materials, components and methods of construction used in a building or structure must be capable of sustaining at an acceptable level of safety and serviceability -

 the most adverse combinations of loads (including combinations of loads that might result in a potential for progressive collapse); and

(b) other actions,

to which they may reasonably be subjected.

B1.2 Loads

٦

)

1

١

1

ł

4

1

1

)

>

\$

The loading requirements of B1.1 are satisfied if the building or structure can resist loads determined in accordance with the following:

(a) Wind loads:

AS1170 Minimum design loads on structures (known as SAA Loading Code)

Part 2 - Wind loads

When using Part 2 of the Standard the following provisions apply:

A limit state basic wind speed of 60 m/s to all areas. The equivalent basic wind speed for permissible stress methods of design is 49 m/s. The terrain and topographic features in Niue are such that the design wind speed corresponding to the basic wind speed, is 57 m/s up to a height of 6 m. When the simplified procedure of AS 1170 part 2 is followed, the value of the factor B, to be applied is 1.5. The maps of Australia in the Standard are to be disregarded.

(b) Dead, live and earthquake loads:

NZS 4203 Part 1, 2 and 3 General structural design and design loadings for buildings.

The maps of New Zealand shown in the Standard are to be disregarded. The earthquake zone number for Niue is 3. The corresponding zone factor for use with NZS 4203 is 0.3.

Note: The zone numbers have been given on the basis of consistent values for Fiji, Vanuatu, Solomon Islands and Niue. This means that any particular zone number such as zone 6 and the value of its zone factor, have the same meaning in the codes of all of these countries. (c) Other loads: The principles of structural mechanics.

#### B1.3 Construction deemed-to-satisfy

The requirements of B1.1 for materials and forms of construction are satisfied if they comply with the following:

- (a) Masonry
  - (i) Code of practice for masonry buildings, materials and workmanship: NZS 4210
  - (ii) Code of practice for masonry buildings not requiring specific design: NZS 4229
  - (iii) Code of practice for design of masonry structures: NZS 4230
- (b) Concrete
  - (i) The design of concrete structures: NZS 3101 Parts 1 and 2
  - (ii) Specification for concrete construction: NZS 3109
  - (iii) Specification for concrete construction for minor works: NZS 3124
- (c) Steel construction: NZS 3404.
- (d) Composite steel and concrete: AS 2327.
- (e) Aluminium construction: AS 1664.
- (f) **Timber construction -** Design of timber structures: AS 1720 or NZS 3603.
- (g) Footings: Footings for Class 1 buildings: AS 2870.1
- h) Piling: AS 2159.
- (i) Glass installations: NZS 4223.
- (j) **Protection from termites:** In areas subject to infestation by subterranean termites:
  - (i) Physical barriers: AS 1694.
  - (ii) Soil treatment: AS 2057.
- (k) Roof construction:

TR 440 and manufacturer's recommendations.

#### **B1 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS**

- (I) Particleboard structural flooring: AS 1860.
- (m) External wall cladding: No structural damage when tested to TR 440 to withstand impact from a 4 kg piece of timber of nominal cross-section 100 mm x 50 mm striking end on at a velocity of 15 m/s.

#### B1.4 Allowable number of storeys

The maximum number of storeys must not exceed 3.

## B1.5 Reinforcement and embedded steel to be protected

All reinforcement and other embedded items of steel, whether used in concrete or masonry in vulnerable locations must be:

(a) epoxy coated;

- (b) hot dip galvanised; or
- (c) otherwise protected against corrosion.

When galvanising is used as an option the cement use must be free of calcium hydroxide.

A patented chemical additive Z-12/C, is available for use with sea water and unwashed saline aggregate for makine concrete of good quality and durability. Reinforcing bars do not easily corrode and destroy the concrete as would ordinarily be the case when using sea water and saline aggregates. The product is manufactured by Concrete Hitech (Holdings) Ltd., 15 Avenue Victor Hugo, 75116 Paris, France.

#### B1.6 Site mixed concrete and grout

When mixing concrete or grout at site the mix ratios corresponding to the *required* strength must be those given in Table B1.6

COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH	MIX RATIOS BY VOLUME				
	WATER	CEMENT	SAND	COARSE AGGREGATE	
10 MPa concrete	1.0 M	1	2.5	3.0 of 20 mm agg.	
17.5 MPa concrete	0.9	1	3.2	3.3 of 20 mm agg.	
20 MPa concrete	0.8	1	2.7	3.0 of 20 mm agg.	
25 MPa concrete	0.7	1	2.3	2.7 of 20 mm agg.	
17.5 MPa grout	1.1	1	3.0	2.7 of 10 mm agg.	

The quantity of water given is the maximum allowable and must be reduced with increase in moisture content of sand or aggregate.

## NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

**DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 AND 10)** 

# SECTION DC

## **FIRE RESISTANCE**

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability

· •

### FIRE RESISTANCE

### CONTENTS

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Part

Ē

ţ

 $\tilde{\gamma}_{1}$ 

• 1

Part

DC1.4 Common walls

DC1.5 Separating floors

DC1.6 Sarking-type materials

DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability

DC1.1 External walls of Class 1 buildings

DC1.2 Allowable encorachments

DC1.3 Exceptions

National Building Code - 1990

Page DC - 1

.

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### OBJECTIVES

**DCP1** A Class 1 building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

- (a) it is protected from fire in any other building; and
- (b) materials used in the construction be such that if there is a fire in the building-
  - the spread of fire and the generation of smoke and toxic gases will be minimised;
  - stability will be maintained for a period at least sufficient for the occupants to escape and to ensure the safety of fire-fighters; and
  - (iii) there will be little risk of collapse onto adjoining property.

### REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

1

**DCP1.1** *External walls* of class 1 buildings, located within 1 m of the allotment boundary or 2m from other buildings on the same allotment must -

- (a) remain stable and not allow the passage of destructive heat, flames, smoke or gases through them for an hour, in the event of a fire; and
- (b) not allow the passage of flames, smoke or gases through *windows* for an hour and such *windows* must not be openable.

**DCP 1.2** A *common wall* must if it separates a class 1 building from any other class, remain stable and prevent the passage of destructive heat, flames, smoke or gases for an hour, in the event of a fire.

**DCP 1.3** The underside of a floor separating 2 *soleoccupancy units* each being a separate domicile must not be *combustible*.

**DCP 1.4** Any *sarking-type material* used in a class 1 building must have a *flammability index* of less than 5.

.

Ĺ

### **DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

### FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

### DC1.1 External walls of Class 1 buildings

Except as permitted by Clause DC1.3 or DC1.4, an *external wall* of a Class 1 building, and any openings in that wall, must be -

- (a) set back not less than 1 m from an allotment boundary other than the boundary adjoining a road alignment or other public space; and
- (b) not less than 2 m from another building on the same allotment.

### DC1.2 Allowable encroachments

The distance from an allotment boundary or between buildings must be the shortest distance measured from the outermost point of the building or buildings concerned, except that-

- (a) fascia, gutters, downpipes, *non-combustible* eaves lining, and the like;
- (b) masonry chimney backs, flues, pipes, cooling appliances or other services;
- light fittings, electricity or gas meters, aerials or antennae;
- (d) pergolas or sun blinds; and
- (e) unroofed terraces, landings, steps or ramps, not more than 1 m in height,

may encroach into that distance if the distance to the boundary or between the buildings is not reduced to less than 500 mm or the distance between the buildings is not reduced to less than 1 m.

### DC1.3 Exceptions

Clause DC1.1 does not apply to-

- (a) an *external wall* that previously complied with this Part and is reclad, if the recladding does not reduce the distance to the boundary or building by more than 150 mm; or
- (b) an open garage.

### DC1.4 Common walls

A common wall must-

- (a) be of masonry or concrete, or be fully lined with *fire-protective covering* and extend to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof or not less than 450 mm above a roof with a *combustible* lining;
- (b) have a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 if it separates Class 1 buildings on different allotments.

### DC1.5 Separating floors

The underside of a floor separating *sole-occupancy units*, each being a separate domicile and located one above the other, must be lined with material with a FRL of not less than 30/30/30.

#### DC1.6 Sarking-type materials

Any sarking-type material used in a Class 1 building must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.

### DC1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

# NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

## DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 AND 10)

# SECTION DD

# ACCESS AND EGRESS

## Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DD1 Construction of Exits

·

.

### ACCESS AND EGRESS

.

ş { f 0

ŧ

ŧ hi. 5 ξį) х, 4 Ļ ś

2 Ø,

a

	CONTENTS
ERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	
Part	Part
D1 Construction of Exits	DD1.4 Parapets on flat roofs
D1.1 Treads and risers	DD1.5 Number of exits
D1.2 Curved stairs	DD1.6 Ramp in exits
)D1.3 Balustrades	DD1.7 Dimensions of exits
-	
	•

ACCESS AND EGRESS

Ľ

đ,

ų

4

ŝ

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### **OBJECTIVES AND REQUIRED PERFORMANCE**

**DDP 1** A Class 1 building must be so designed and constructed that the following are fulfilled:

- (a) Stairways, ramps and passageways must be such as to provide safe passage for the users of the building.
- (b) Stairways, ramps, floors and balconies, and any roof to which people normally have access, must have bounding walls, balustrades or other barriers

where necessary to protect users from the risk of falling.

- (c) Stairways must provide safe and reasonably comfortable dimensions for goings and risers. In any case the *pitch* of the stairway must be maintained within limits of 23° and 42°.
- (d) If any ramp is used the slope must not exceed 1:8.
- (e) A Class 1 building must have provision for fast *exit* during any emergency.

i

.

### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

### CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

#### DD1.1 Treads and risers

ď

Æ

틁

х;

ű:

£

4

6

¥

¢

sî.

Ķ.

đ.

- (a) A stairway must be suitable to provide safe passage in relation to the nature, volume and frequency of likely usage.
- (b) A stairway in any building satisfies (a) if it has:
  - (i) not more than 18 risers in each flight;
  - going and riser dimensions in accordance with Figure DD1.1 and Table DD1.1 that are constant throughout each flight;
  - (iii) risers which do not have any openings that would allow a 100 mm sphere to pass through between the treads; and
  - (iv) the tread must not exceed the going by more than 20 mm.

### DD1.2 Curved stairs

Curved stairs must comply with the relevant requirements of DD1.1 as well as the following:

- (a) For the purposes of satisfying Table DD1.1 the going must be measured:
  - along half way across the width of the stair where the clear width is less than 900 mm; and

- (ii) 300 mm from each side of the stair where the clear width is 900 mm or more.
- (b) All steps must have the same uniform taper.
- (c) The going at the narrow end of the steps must be not less than 75 mm.
- (d) Winders are not permitted.

### DD1.3 Balustrades

- (a) A continuous balustrade must be provided along the side of any stairway or ramp, or any corridor, hallway, balcony, bridge or the like, if -
  - (i) it is not bounded by a wall; and
  - (ii) the change in level is more than 1 m.
- (b) A balustrade must prevent, as far as practicable-
  - (i) children climbing over or through it;
  - (ii) persons accidentally falling from the floor; and
  - (iii) objects which might strike a person at a lower level accidentally falling from the floor surface.

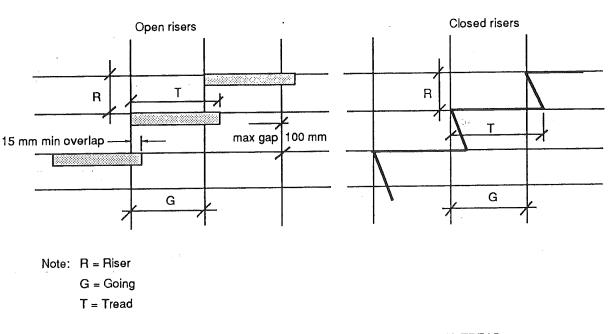


FIGURE DD1.1 MEASUREMENT OF RISER GOING AND TREAD

÷	GOING (mm)										
Pitch	230	240	250	260	270	280	290	300	310	320	330
42°							<u> </u>		<u></u>		
41º	200										
40°	192	200									
39°	186	194	200								
38º	180	187	195	200							
37°	173	181	188	196	200						
36°	167	174	182	188	196	200					
35°	161	168	175	182	189	195	200				
34°	155	162	168	175	182	188	195	200			
33°	149	156	162	169	175	181	188	195	200		
32º		144	156	162	168	174	181	187	194	200	
31°			150	156	162	167	174	180	186	192	198
30°				150	156	161	167	173	179	185	190
29º					150	155	161	167	173	179	183
28°						150	155	160	165	170	175
27°							148	153	158	163	168
26°								146	151	156	161
25°										149	154

Note:

Actual riser dimension may be selected to suit the inter landing height. However the value of the riser dimension must not be outside the maximum or minimum dimensions shown for each value of going.

- (c) At balconies a balustrade satisfies (b) if -
  - (i) it has a height of not less than 930 mm above the balcony floor;
  - the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade is not more than 100 mm except where the space between the rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm;
  - (iii) all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold; and
  - (iv) it does not have any openings more than 100 mm wide within 150 mm of the floor level.

(d) In stairways and ramps (including access bridges and landings) a balustrade satisfies (b) if -

- (i) it has a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of the stair treads and the floor of the landing, balcony, corridor, hallway, access bridge or the like;
- (ii) the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade (including any openable window or panel) is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm; and
- (iii) all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold.

### CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

d

s.

16

.1.

出现

ę e

đ

(6) (6)

13 13 18

10

E.

ŧ,

### DD 1.4 Parapets on flat roofs

Where a flat roof or other elevated place has regular access a parapet or balustrade of not less than 1 m height above the surface of the roof or elevated place must be provided. The width of any opening in the parapet or balustrade must not exceed 100 mm.

### DD1.5 Number of exits

Every Class 1 building must have two *exits*. At least one of these *exits* must provide an easy means of egress in case of any emergency without reducing security to the building. Such emergency *exits* may take the form of a trap door on an elevated floor or some such arrangement. *Windows* and other such openings used as emergency *exits* must have a minimum clear dimension of 560 mm and a minimum clear area of opening of 0.6 m<sup>2</sup>. The shutter must be capable of opening to 90° to the wall. The top of the *window* sill must be no more than 900 mm from the floor inside. The height of the *window* sill from the ground or floor outside must not exceed 1800 mm.

### DD1.6 Ramp in exits

A ramp may be used in place of a stairway. The gradient of any such ramp must be no steeper than 1:8.

### DD1.7 Dimensions of exits

The clear minimum width of a stairway or ramp must be 760 mm. The unobstructed height throughout must be not less than 2 m.

### **DD1** CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

.

•

,

.

.

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

### DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 AND 10)

# SECTION DE

# ELECTRICITY

### Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DE1 Electrical Safety

DE2 Amenity

М

ы

¢

а

0

### ELECTRICITY

đ

¢

ч. :t				CONTE	NTO		
:				CONTE	6111		
1) (1	PERFO	RMANCE REQUIREME	NTS				
a	DEEM	ED-TO-SATISFY PROVIS	SIONS				
tê. Q							
1	Part				Part		
1	DE1	Electrical Safety			DE2	Amenity	
ણ હ	DE1.1	General Requirement			DE2.1	Light switch layout	
18 11 12	DE1.2	Plug Sockets					
1							
() (1							
÷ŧ							
E							
í N							
4) 12							
¢.							
i .i							
ţ							
۱ ۱							
્ય							
۲۲ ۱							
a							
я; Ц							
10							
A E							
E							
ì		·					
ו ו							
.4	-						
t I							
١							
١							
4					-		

.

### ELECTRICITY

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### OBJECTIVES

ġ

-ş

 $\mathcal{Q}$ 

¢

f

ł

ų,

i{

ď

s(

X

3

. (

a

đ

ŧ

ł

٩

ŧ;

4

€ ₹. ₹.

Ġ,

All electrical work associated with a Class 1 building must meet the following objectives -

### DEP1 Electrical Safety

It must prevent electrocution, burns or fire.

### DEP2 Amenity

It must satisfy the reasonable expectations of the occupants by ensuring that it is adequate for their intended use, both current and anticipated.

### **REQUIRED REFORMANCE**

### DEP1.1 Electrical safety

The supply system must:

 (a) have suitable devices of adequate interruptive duty to automatically shut off the supply in the event of a fault or overload. Such devices must allow easy reinstatement of the supply after interruption;

- (b have devices which are clearly identified and easily reached to isolate live parts from the incoming supply;
- (c) when the neutral of the supply is earthed, have socket outlet or plug - socket adaptor construction which would ensure that the live, neutral and earth conductors can only be connected to the corresponding live, neutral and earth conductors of the plug;
- (d) be adequately protected against damage arising from exposure to weather, water or excessive dampness mechanical loads and other such agents expected under normal conditions of use; and
- (e) ensure that the main switch is normally accessible only to the occupants.

### **DEP2.1** Amenity

The supply system must have an adequate number of plug sockets of minimum 10 Amperes capacity to serve the reasonable anticipated needs of the occupants. .

.

### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

### ELECTRICAL SAFETY

### DE1.1 General requirements

it it

A

ł

đ

iÇ,

đ

ć

有遗

ć(

10 1 All electrical wiring and installations in or on any class 1 and 10 building must ensure safety from electric shock and fire.

, structures and premises (known as allow for the long term anticipated requirements of the occupants.

### DE1.2 Plug sockets

Plug sockets must:

(a) have their individual switch;

- (b) be located so that
  - (i) cords need not be taken across doorways;
  - trailing cords do not have to cross circulation routes;
- (c) not be located behind door-swings; and
- (d) in the kitchen be located 250 mm above worktops at the back of benches or on a return wall where it exists.

### AMENITY

### DE2.1 Light switch layout

{

1

San San San

87

R R

**答注八天光军文化法**华

能比夏夏夏天还在吃人人大吃人

甲卡论 微法元 (片)(

The layout of light switches must follow the main night time circulation routes such as from the entrance hall to the living area to the bed-rooms to the bathroom and toilet. Crossing any major space in the dark must be avoided. The switches must be located close to door openings.

DE2 AMENITY

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

### **DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 AND 10)**

# SECTION DF

# HEALTH AND AMENITY

### Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing
- DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities
- DF3 Room Sizes and Heights
- DF4 Light and Ventilation
- DF5 Watersupply Plumbing
- DF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- DF7 Roof Drainage

. .

### HEALTH AND AMENITY

### SECTION DF

### CONTENTS

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

### Part

DF1	Damp and Weatherproofing
DF1.1	Site drainage
DF1.2	Building on land subject to dampness
DF1.3	Drainage of land external to building
DF1.4	Weatherproofing of roofs and walls
DF1.5	Pliable roof sarking
DF1.6	Water proofing of wet areas in buildings
DF1.7	Damp-proof courses and mortars
DF1.8	Acceptable damp-proof courses
DF1.9	Damp-proofing of floors on the ground
DF2	Cooking and Sanitary Facilities
DF2.1	Facilities required
DF3	Room Sizes and Heights
DF3.1	Height of rooms
DF3.2	Reduced height permissable
DF3.3	Ceiling fans
DF4	Light and Ventilation
DF4.1	Provision of natural light
DF4.2	Methods and extent of natural lighting
DF4.3	Natural light borrowed from adjoining room
DF4.4	Artificial lighting
DF4.5	Ventilation of rooms
DF4.6	Natural ventilation
DF4.7	Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room
DF4.8	Restriction on position of WCs and urinals
DF4.9	Airlocks
DF4.10	Sub-floor ventilation

Ρ	а	rt
---	---	----

DF5	Watersupply Plumbing
DF5.1	General requirements
DF5.2	Means of compliance
DF5.3	Pipes which are not easy to access
DF5.4	Access to domestic-type water heaters
DF5.5	Rainwater storage
DF6	Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
DF6.1	General
DF6.2	Means of compliance
DF6.3	Fixture unit ratings
DF6.4	Trapping of fixtures and appliances
DF6.5	Fixture discharge pipes
DF6.6	Unvented branch drains
DF6.7	Venting
DF6.8	Design of pipes and drains
DF6.9	Gully traps other than floor waste gullies
DF6.10	Floor waste gullies
DF6.11	Inspection openings
DF7	Roof Drainage
DF7.1	Design of roof gutters
DF7.2	Design of downpipes
DF7.3	Incompatible metals for gutters
Specific	cation

## Specification DF 2.1 Latrines for Areas where there is no Water Supply

Specification DF 5.5 Rainwater Storage

T

المراجع المراجع

### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

### OBJECTIVES

**DFP1** The design and construction of a Class 1 building must meet the following objectives -

- (a) freedom from unhealthy and uncomfortable damp and wet conditions;
- (b) proper facilities for the preparation and cooking of food and the cleaning of utensils;
- (c) adequate facilities for personal washing and the washing of clothes;
- (d) hygienic toilet facilities with adequate privacy and which will not be a nuisance to anyone;
- (e) sufficient living space for privacy and comfort;
- (f) adequate light and ventilation consistent with the requirements of health hygiene and comfort;

### **REQUIRED PERFORMANCE**

### DFP 1.1 Damp and weatherproofing

Buildings must be so sited and suitable damp and weatherproofing provided where necessary to prevent-

- (a) moisture or damp affecting the stability of the building;
- (b) the creation of any unhealthy or dangerous condition;
- (c) damage or defacement from moisture present at the completion of construction;
- (d) causing undue damage to adjoining property; or
- (e) the accumulation of surface water against the building or beneath the floor.

Visible water must not be allowed to remain under or around for more than 1 hour after 10 minutes of maximum rainfall resulting from a storm water with a return period of 5 years.

### DFP1.2 Cooking and sanitary facilities

Adequate cooking toilet and washing facilities must be provided for the occupants to allow reasonable comfort, hygiene and privacy.

### DFP1.3 Room sizes

The *floor area*, plan dimensions and ceiling heights of rooms and other spaces must be adequate for living purposes.

### **DFP1.4** Light and ventilation

The standard of light and ventilation within a building must be adequate for the occupants, having regard to health hygiene and comfort.

### DFP1.5 Water supply plumbing

Plumbing for watersupply must use materials which do not react with the water and thereby make it unsuitable for domestic use. Suitable precautions must be taken to ensure that unsafe or unhygienic materials have no chance of entering the supply system. The installation of hot water systems must not impair the safety of the users. All concealed and difficult-to-access plumbing work must be suitably protected so that there is no liklihood of damage and leakage. The plumbing must take into account the current and anticipated needs of the users and allow for the simultaneous use of the connected system by others. Where rainwater from the roof run off is the source of supply care must be exercised to ensure that there is no reasonable chance for the water to become contaminated. Allowance must be made for lean years of rainfall.

### DFP1.6 Sanitary plumbing and drainage

Sanitary plumbing must be be laid to self-cleansing grades consistent with their discharge loading, unless other suitable arrangements are made to ensure that the system is kept free of the accretion of sewage and other waste matter. The size of drains and the layout of their connections must reasonably ensure the current and anticipated needs of the users. The connections to sanitary installations must ensure that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions nor create any nuisance to anyone and are suitably vented.

### DFP1.7 Roof drainage

Any roof drainage system provided must be capable of handling the reasonably expected peak intensities of rainfall.

ł

· ,

### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

### DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

### DF1.1 Site drainage

The construction of a site drainage system and the position and manner of discharge of a stormwater drain must not-

- (a) result in the entry of water into any building or other allotments;
- (b) affect the stability of any building; or
- (c) create any unhealthy or dangerous condition within or around any building.
- DF1.2 Building on land subject to dampness or flooding

One or more of the following measures must be carried out if it is warranted by the dampness of the building *site* or proneness to flooding:

- (a) The subsoil must be adequately drained.
- (b) The ground under the building must be regraded or filled and provided with outlets to prevent accumulation of water.
- (c) The surface of the ground under the building must be covered with a suitable damp-resisting material.
- (d) The top of the floor must be kept at not less than 300 mm above the known flood level at the *site*.

### DF1.3 Drainage of land external to building

A suitable system of drainage must be provided if paving, excavation or any other work on an allotment will cause undue interference with the existing drainage of rainwater falling on the allotment whether the existing drainage is natural or otherwise.

### DF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls

Roofs and *external walls* must be constructed to prevent rain or dampness penetrating to the inner parts of a building.

### DF1.5 Pliable roof sarking

Pliable roof *sarking- type material* used under roof or wall coverings must comply and be fixed in accordance with-

- (a) AS 1736; or
- (b) AS 1903 and AS 1904.

### DF1.6 Water proofing of wet areas in buildings

The following parts of a building must be impervious to water:

- In any building the floor surface or substrate in a shower enclosure, or within 1.5 m measured horizontally from a point vertically below the shower fitting, if there is no enclosure;
- (b) The wall surface or substrate-
  - (i) of a shower enclosure, or if the shower is not enclosed, within 1.5 m and exposed to a shower fitting, to a height of 1.8 m above the floor;
  - (ii) immediately adjacent or behind a bath, trough, basin, sink, or similar fixture, to a height of 300 mm above the fixture if it is within 75 mm of the wall.
- (c) The junction between the floor and wall if the wall and floor are *required* to be impervious to water.
- (d) The junction between the wall and fixture if the wall is *required* to be impervious to water.

### DF1.7 Damp-proof courses and mortars

Moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching-

- the lowest floor timbers and the walls above the lowest floor joists;
- (b) the walls above the damp-proof course; and
- (c) the underside of a suspended floor constructed of a material other than timber, and the supporting beams or girders.

### DF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses

A damp-proof course must consist of-

- (a) a material that complies with AS 2904; or
- (b) suitable termite shields placed on piers; or
- (c) other suitable material.

#### DF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on filling moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching the upper surface of the floor and adjacent walls by-

- (a) the insertion of a vapour barrier in accordance with AS 2870.1; or
- (b) other suitable means.

### **COOKING AND SANITARY FACILITIES**

### DF2.1 Facilities required

Cooking and sanitary facilities must be provided as shown in Table DF2.1.

, · ·	MINIMUM FACILITIES REQUIRED	
In all cases	a) facilities for the preparation and cooking of food, and the cleaning of utensils.	l for
Where there is piped water supply to the kitchen and ablution areas	(b) a kitchen sink in a kitchen	
	(c) a shower or other adequate personal washing facilities.	· · · · · ·
	(d) clothes washing facilities.	
Alter en parativo de la companya de	(e) a closet pan and facilities for washing hands.	- 12
Where there is piped watersupply only to a tap in the kitchen or up	(f) a paved raised platform with a paved area and drain a	round it.
to a stand- pipe in the vicinity of the building or where there is no	(g) a suitable type of privy as per Specification DF2.1.	
piped water supply		
NOTE:	the second s	
i) If any of these faci	lities are detached from the main building, they must be set as f the occupants of the building.	side for

.

12

### **BOOM SIZES AND HEIGHTS**

### DF3.1 Height of rooms

Minimum heights below the ceiling and any framing excluding minor projections such as cornices, are:

- habitable room average 2.4 m and (i) minimum of 2.1 m; and
- bathroom, shower room, water closet, (ii) laundry, pantry, or the like - 2.1 m.

### DF3.2 Reduced height permissible

These heights may be reduced if the reduction does not unduly interfere with the proper functioning of the room.

### DF3.3 Ceiling fans

Ceiling fans and other such appliances must be at a minimum vertical clearance of 2.1 m. **1** .

÷11

- - . ·
    - 21 1 1 N
      - and the provide state of the end of the state of the stat 123
      - - a de la companya de l La companya de la comp
      - (1) Some and the second secon Second sec
        - and the second stars and
      - and the second second

- And a second n de la seconda de la composition de la comp
- and the second second second second second and the second second second second

- an an ann an Airtean an Airtean An Airtean Airtean Airtean Airtean Airtean Airtean Airtean and a start of the second s

### LIGHT AND VENTILATION

### DF4.1 Provision of natural light

Natural lighting must be provided to all habitable rooms.

### DF4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

Direct natural lighting must be provided by windows that-

- have an aggregate light transmitting area measured excluding framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room;
- (b) face-
  - (i) a court or other space open to the sky; or
  - (ii) an open verandah, open carport, or the like;
- (c) are not less than a horizontal distance of 1 m from any boundary of an adjoining allotment that they face.

### DF4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room

Natural lighting to a room may come through a glazed panel or opening from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if-

- the glazed panel or opening has an area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to which it provides light;
- (b) the adjoining room has *windows* with an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms,

and the areas specified in (a) and (b) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural light is provided from another source.

### DF4.4 Artificial lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided to sanitary compartments, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlock and laundries, if natural lighting of a standard equivalent to that *required* by DF4.2 is not available and the periods of occupation, or use of the room or space will create undue hazard to occupants seeking egress in an emergency.

### DF4.5 Ventilation of rooms

A habitable room, sanitary compartment, bathroom, shower room, laundry and any other room occupied by a person for any purpose must be provided with natural ventilation complying with DF4.6. Where it is not practical to provide natural ventilation for any sanitary compartment, bathroom, shower or laundry, it is permissible to substitute natural ventilation with a mechanical ventilation of equal effectiveness.

### **DF4.6** Natural ventilation

*Required* natural ventilation must be provided by permanent *windows*, openings, doors or other devices -

- (a) with an aggregate opening or openable size which must be not less than the following percentages of the *floor area* of the room *required* to be ventilated;
  - (i) 15% for habitable rooms; and
  - (ii) 10% for all other rooms; and
- (b) which open to-
  - (i) a court, or space open to the sky; or
  - (ii) an open verandah, open carport, or the like.

### DF4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room

Natural ventilation to a room may come through a *window*, opening, ventilating door or other device from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if -

- the room to be ventilated or from which ventilation is borrowed is not a sanitary compartment;
- ventilation is not borrowed from one bedroom to another or between a bedroom and the kitchen;
- (iii) the window, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than the required percentages of the floor area of the room to be ventilated; and
- (iv) the adjoining room has a window, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than the *required* percentages of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms.
- NOTE: The ventilating areas specified may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural ventilation is provided from another source.

### DF4.8 Restriction on position of WCs and urinals

A room containing a closet pan or urinal must not open directly into-

- (a) a kitchen; or
- (b) a room for storage or consumption of food, except if it is in a building containing only one *habitable* room.

#### LIGHT AND VENTILATION

# DF4.9 Airlocks

If a room containing a closet pan or urinal is prohibited under DF4.8 from opening directly to another room -

- (i) access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room; or
- (ii) the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with an exhaust fan.

#### DF4.10 Sub-floor ventilation

- (a) Suitable provision must be made to prevent undue deterioration of the lowest floor of a building because of dampness, other conditions on the allotment or the design of the building.
- (b) The following would satisfy the requirements of (a) -
  - (i) where timber is used, the floor framing must be suspended with an absolute minimum of

250 mm and an average minimum of 400 mm clearance from the ground underneath, to the floor and the immediate surrounds of the building. The average clearance must be determined as the average of the clearances at the corners of a 3 m square grid covering the building plan. Subfloor ventilation must be provided with ventilation openings totalling not less than 3% of the peripheral vertical area between the ground and the boundary of the floor. These openings are to be spaced as evenly as practicable.

- (ii) where other than timber is used the following must be provided -
  - Subfloor ventilation if the floor is suspended;
  - an impervious cover over the ground surface beneath the building; or
  - the floor members suitably treated.

# PART DF 5

# WATERSUPPLY PLUMBING

#### DF5.1 General requirements

The plumbing work for water supply must ensure -

- (a) the appropriateness of the materials and products used;
- (b) the correct sizing of water services for the intended use;
- the control of cross-connections and prevention of backflow;
- (d) adequate care in the installation of the services;
- (e) suitable provision of main and subsidiary storage as required ;
- (f) adequate connections to sanitary services without endangering health and hygiene; and
- (g) that the installation of hot water systems provide safe and adequate service.

#### DF5.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of DF5.1 are satisfied if all plumbing for watersupply is carried out to the relevant provisions of -

- (a) AS 3500 Part 1 for cold water service; and
- (b) AS 3500 Part 4 for hot water service.

#### DF5.3 Pipes which are not easy to access

Particular attention is drawn to the provisions in AS 3500 -Parts 1 and 4 which prohibit the installation of pipes and fittings of certain materials in locations which are concealed or difficult to access. These include pipes made of ABS, galvanised steel, polybutylene and UPVC. Pipes and fittings made of copper, copper alloy, stainless steel, ductile iron, cast iron and polyethylene when used in concealed or difficult to access locations must follow the special precautions specified in AS 3500 - Parts 1 and 4.

- DF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters
  - [10] A. Martin, A. M. Martin, J. M. Martin, M. Martin, M. S. Martin, J. Ma
- (a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
  - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or other loads;
  - (ii) be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
  - (iii) provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- (b) AS 3500 Part 4 is the relevant standard for the installation of a household water heater.

#### DF5.5 Rainwater storage

Where rainwater is collected and stored, the storage and distribution must reasonably ensure that the water is not contaminated by unsafe or unsuitable materials. The capacity of the catchment and storage must be adequate to provide a continued supply of water during years of low rainfall.

The details given in Specification DF5.5 meet the requirements of this clause.

# SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

# DF6.1 General

#### **DF6.1.1 Requirements**

Sanitary plumbing and drainage must ensure -

- the appropriateness of the products and materials used;
- (b) the correct sizing of drainage services for the intended use;
- (c) adequate care in the installation of the services including the provision of appropriate grades; and
- (d) that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions or any nuisance to anyone.

# DF6.1.2 Some common terms

Apart from the defined terms given in A1.1 the following terms used in this Section are explained:

(a) Nominal size (DN)

While converting to metric dimensions some manufacturers of pipes and fittings have used hard conversion whereas others have used soft conversion. For these and other reasons it is impractical to specify exact pipe and fitting dimensions. All pipes and fittings in this Section are therefore specified by their nominal size. This is indicated by the letters "DN" followed by a number. Since this number is only an approximation of the actual size, it is not subject to exact measurement and must not be used in calculations. The nominal size is thus only a numerical designation of the size which is common to all components in a piping system (other than components such as steel tubes which are designated by their outside diameter and other components by their thread size). It is just a convenient round number for reference purposes and is only loosely related to the manufacturing dimensions.

#### (b) Trap

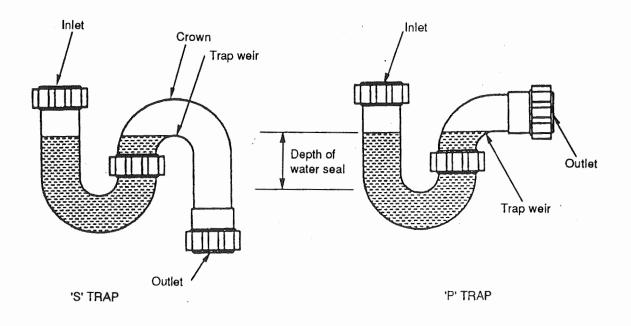
A trap is a device which retains a water seal for preventing the escape of sewer gases from sanitary plumbing. Figure DF6.1.2 shows two common types of fixture traps. There are also traps integral with gullies, water closet pans etc.

The water seal can be broken by self-siphonage or induced siphonage as well as by positive pressure of the gases breaking through the seal. It is also possible for the seal to be dried out by prolonged non-use of the associated part of the system.

The best means of preventing the loss of the seal by siphonage or by positive pressure is to vent the trap to the outside air.

# (c) Fixture discharge pipe

This is the discharge pipe to which any single sanitary fixture is connected.



#### FIGURE DF6.1.2 EXAMPLES OF FIXTURE TRAPS

# DF6 SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

## (d) Gullies

A gully is an assembly used for providing a water seal when handling the discharge from only *waste fixtures* and not any *soil fixture*. The water seal prevents the escape of foul gases into the building or into the atmosphere in the vicinity of the assembly.

It is a disconnector gully when it provides a separation through the water seal, between the discharge from *waste fixtures* and the rest of the sanitary system.

A floor waste gully is a disconnector gully used inside a building with a floor grating or waste outlet fitting on a riser pipe. Discharge pipes from *waste fixtures* may also connect to a floor waste gully.

An overflow relief gully functions as a self-cleaning trap and is provided with a loosely fitted grating. This allows for the relief of any possible surcharge or overflow from the *drain*. The riser of the gully may have inlets for discharge from *waste fixtures*.

#### DF6.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of DF6.1.1 are satisfied if all sanitary plumbing and drainage works are carried out to the relevant provisions of AS 3500 - Part 2 - Sanitary plumbing and sanitary drainage, as well as this part of the Code.

## DF6.3 Fixture unit ratings

In the design of discharge pipes and *drains* the *fixture unit* ratings shown in Table DF6.3 must be used. For the fixtures listed in the Table the maximum unvented length of the associated fixture discharge pipe must not exceed 2.5 m except that this may be 6 m for a water closet pan with a DN100 trap and discharge pipe. The length of the pipe is measured along the centre line from the weir of the trap to the point of connection to a graded discharge pipe, *drain, stack* or other drainage trap.

TABLE DF6.3 FIXTURE UNIT RATINGS Nominal size of trap Fixture unit Fixture outlet and fixture rating discharge pipe Basin DN30 or DN40 Bath (with or **DN40** without shower) Bidet **DN40 Clothes washing DN40** 5 machine Dishwashing **DN40** З machine Floor waste gully without fixture **DN50** 0 with fixture **DN40 or DN 50** as per fixture rating Laundry trough DN40 or DN 50 F Shower DN40 or DN50 2 Sink - less than 45 litres **DN40** 2 - more than 45 litres **DN50** З Water closet pan DN80 or DN100 5 (i) When a clothes washing machine connects to a trough trap, only the trough unit fixture rating is considered. When a dishwashing machine connects to a sink trap only the sink fixture unit (ii) rating is considered.

Page DF- 12

# SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

#### DF6.4 Trapping of fixtures and appliances

**DF6.4.1** The discharge from all sanitary fixtures and appliances must pass through traps before entering the *drain, soil pipe* or *waste pipe*. The fixture trap must retain a water seal of:

- (a) 50 mm for traps of size DN50 or less
- (b) 75 mm for traps of size greater than DN50

The traps must be located as close as possible to the fixture and not farther than 600 mm from the fixture outlet, except in case of permitted fixture pairs and floor waste gullies.

**DF6.4.2** The flollowing fixtures may be connected in pairs to a single fixture trap:

- (a) Wash basins
- (b) Sinks
- (c) Laundry troughs
- (d) Showers

The fixture pairs must be connected so that the centre to centre distance between their outlets is no more than 1.2 m.

# DF6.5 Fixture discharge pipes

#### DF6.5.1 Minimum grades

Discharge pipes must be laid to the minimum grades shown in Table DF6.5.1

	SCHARGE PIPES	
Nominal size	Minimum grade	
DN30	1 in 30	
DN40	DN40 1 in 40	
DN65	1 in 40	
DN80	1 in 60	
DN100	1 in 60	

# DF6.5.2 Connections

The connection of any fixture discharge pipe to a graded discharge pipe or between two graded discharge pipes must be made as follows:

(a) With 45° or *sweep junction* fittings;

- (b) Where the pipes are of different sizes-
  - (i) the soffits of both must be in continuous alignment, and
  - (ii) where an unequal junction fitting is used, the soffit of the branch pipe must be at the same level or higher than the soffit of the pipe to which it connects; and
- (c) The level of the trap or floor waste gully weir must be at a higher level than the soffit of the graded discharge pipe to which it connects.

# DF6.5.3 Cleaning eyes

Fixture discharge pipes must have accessible cleaning eyes at all bends.

## DF6.6 Unvented branch drains

Where the risk of escape of dangerous and unpleasant gases into occupied premises is minimal the venting of branch *drains* is not *required*. However all of the limitations given in the following sub-clauses and illustrated in figure DF6.6 must be met in such cases. (For limitation of length of fixture discharge pipes, see DF6.3.)

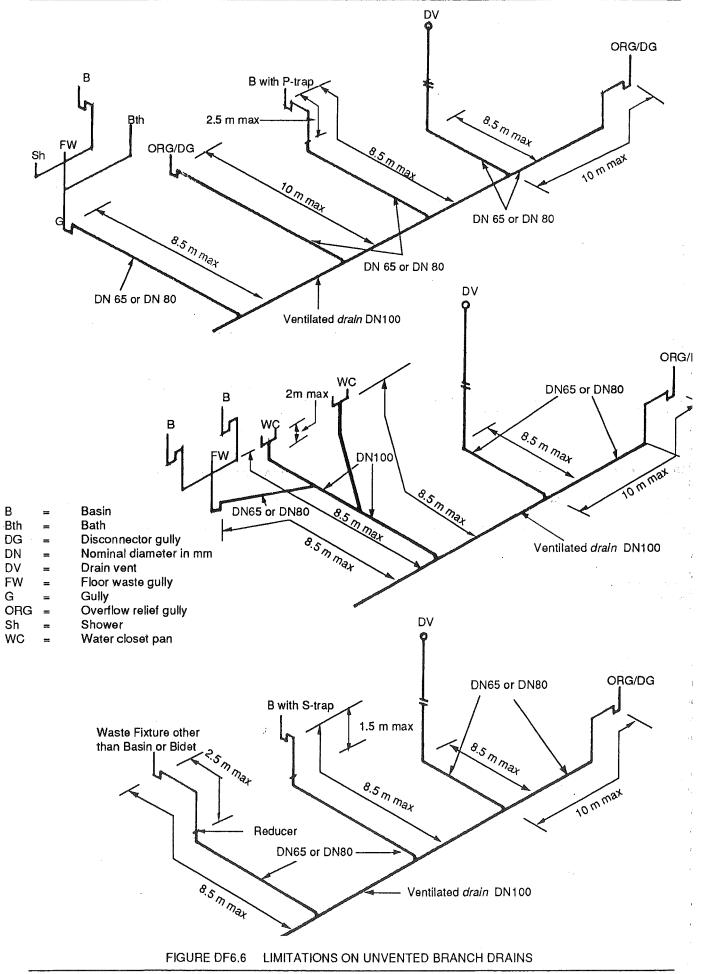
# DF6.6.1 Limitations on location or nature of connection

- . .
- (a) The connection of any unvented branch *drain* to a vented *drain* must be located at the ground floor level and the vented *drain* installed on grade below or above ground;
- (b) In the case of an unvented drain receiving discharge from only waste fixtures, it must connect to a gully;
- (c) An unvented *drain* other than in (b) must connect to a disconnector gully; or
- (d) The connection must be from a discharge pipe serving a single fixture and the length of the discharge pipe is-
  - (i) less than 3.5 m when serving a *waste fixture*; or
  - (ii) less than 3.0 m when serving a *soil fixture*.

# DF6.6.2 Limitations on size, length and bends

(a) The size of any unvented branch *drain* must comply with the limitations given in Table DF6.6.2

11 1 1 1 1 1 1 1



# SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

TABLE DF6.6.2 SIZE OF UNVENTED BRANCH DRAINS			
Nominal size	Maximum sum of <i>fixture unit</i> loadings discharging into the branch <i>drain</i>		
DN65	5 (but not from a water closet pan) or 8 from one floor waste gully		
DN80	12 (no more than 1 water closet pan connected)		
DN100	30 (no more than 2 water closet pan connected)		

- (b) The length of an unvented branch drain together with that of the fixture discharge pipe must not exceed -
  - (i) 8.5 m from the weir of the fixture trap;
  - (ii) 10 m to a disconnector gully; and
  - (iii) 2.5 m from the reducer to the weir of the trap, where the fixture discharge pipe is of smaller size than the unvented branch *drain*.
- (c) The maximum vertical drop from the crown of the trap to the top of the vented *drain* to which the unvented branch *drain* connects must not exceed -
  - (i) 1.5 m in the case of basins and bidets; and
  - (ii) 2.5 m in the case of all other fixtures.
- (d) The total combined number of long bends in a fixture discharge pipe and branch *drain*, up to the connection with a vented *drain* must be limited to:
  - (i) 2 horizontal and 2 vertical with basins and bidets; and
  - (ii) 2 horizontal and 3 vertical with all other fixtures. The distance between any adjacent horizontal bends must be not less than 300 mm and the vertical drop between two adjacent vertical bends must not exceed 2 m.
- Note: A bend of 45° or less is not considered to be a bend for the purposes of this clause.

# DF6.7 Venting

In order to prevent the escape of dangerous and unpleasant gases into occupied premises and to ensure that water seals in traps are not destroyed by siphonage, adequate venting must be provided for all fixture discharge pipes and *drains* except as allowed by DF6.6.

#### DF6.7.1 Trap vents

The minimum size of a trap vent must be related to the nominal size of the fixture trap as follows:

Size of fixture trap	Size of trap vent
DN30 or DN40	DN30
DN50 to DN100	DN40

Every trap vent must be extended upward at least 50 mm above the flood level rim of the fixture. This may be accomplished in one of the following ways:

- (a) As a vertical vent to open air, the outlet of which is no closer than 900 mm from any opening to the building;
- (b) On an ascending grade of at least 1:80 and then:
  - (i) as a vertical vent to the open air; or
  - (ii) to a connection with a vertical or branch vent.
- (c) Take the vent above the flood level rim of the fixture, then loop it down either vertically or on a downward grade of 1: 80 and connect to a vertical or branch vent.

Trap vents must be located no closer than 75 mm and no farther than 1500 mm from the crown of the trap.

#### DF6.7.2 Drain vents

(a) General

Vents in drains must be provided -

- (i) at the upstream end of any *drain*;
- (ii) at the upstream end of any branch drain to which a fixture trap or floor waste gully is connected and if the distance from the weir of the trap to the vented drain exceeds 8.5 m;
- (iii) at the upstream end of any DN100 branch drain to which 3 or more water closet pans are connected; and
- (iv) at the upstream end of any DN80 branch *drain* to which no more than 2 water closet pans are connected.

# DF6 SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

(b) Location

The upstream vent of any drain must be connected-

- (i) at or close to the end of the drain; or
- (ii) at the vent extension of a *stack* located at or near the upstream end of the *drain*.

In either case it is permissible to have an unvented length of *drain* upstream of the vent connection if the unvented length complies with DF6.6.

(c) Size of vents

The minimum size of an upstream vent of any *drain* is DN50. Subject to this, the vent must be sized by using the ratings given in Table D6.7.2.

TABLE DF6.7.2 SIZE AND RATING OF DRAIN VENTS				
<i>Fixture units</i> Vent rating Vent size discharging into drain				
1 to 10 (incl)	0.5	DN40		
10 (excl) to 30 (incl)	1	DN50		
30 (excl) to 175 (incl)	2	DN65		
175 (excl) to 400 (incl) 3 DN80				

When two or more vents are directly connected to the *drain* these can take the place of a single vent provided the sum of their ratings is not less than the rating *required* for venting the *drain*.

# DF6.7.3 Termination of vents

- (a) Vent pipes from waste fixtures discharging into disconnector gullies and from gullies located within buildings must be vented independently and not be interconnected to any other system vent. Such vents must terminate in the open air:
  - (i) at a height of at least 50 mm above the overflow level of the associated fixture;
  - (ii) at least 900 mm from any opening to the building which is within a horizontal distance of 3 m from the vent; and
  - (ii) not less than 150 mm above its point of penetration through any roof covering.
- (b) Vents other than in (a) must terminate in the open air:
  - not less than 600 mm above any opening into any building which is within a horizontal distance of 3 m from the vent;

- (ii) not less than 150 mm above its point of penetration through any roof covering;
- (iii) not less than 3 m above any trafficable roof deck which is within a horizontal distance of 3 m from the vent;
- (iv) not less than 2 m above or 600 mm below any chimney or similar opening within a horizotal distance of 3 m from the vent;
- (v) not less than 5 m from any air intake; and
- (vi) not less than 600 mm above any eave, coping or parapet which is within a horizontal distance of 600 mm from the vent.

## DF6.8 Design of pipes and drains

DF6.8.1 Sizing of disharge pipes

Discharge pipes must be not less than the size of the fixture traps to which they are connected. The size must be determined from Table DF6.3 and take into consideration:

- (i) the sum of the *fixture unit* rating of all fixtures connected to the pipe;
- (ii) the proposed pipe gradient; and
- (iii) the maximum *fixture unit* loadings given in Table DF6.8.1

1	MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNIT LOADINGS FOR GRADED DISCHARGE PIPES				
Grada	Nominal pipe size (mm)				
Grade	40	50	65	80	100
1 in 20	6	15	51	65	376
1 in 30	5	10	29	39	248
1 in 40	4	8	21	27	182
1 in 50	x	x	x	20	142
1 in 60	x	x	x	16	115

Note

TABLE DF6.8.1

- x indicates that the combination of pipe size and gradient is not permitted.
- Not more than 2 w.c. pans are to be connected to any 80 mm pipe

# SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

# DF6.8.2 Sizing of drains

The size of a vented *drain* must be determined by taking into account the total number of *fixture units* (obtained from Table DF6.3) discharging into the drain.

(a) Normal grades

TABLE DF6.8.2 B

The minimum normal grade of *drains* must be as given in Table DF6.8.2A

BLE DF6.8.2 A NIMUM GRADIENT OF DRAINS		
Nominal size (mm)	Minimum grade	
80	1 in 60	
100	1 in 60	
125	1 in 80	
150	1 in 100	

(b) Maximum fixture unit loadings for vented drains

MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNIT LOADINGS FOR VENTED

The *fixture unit* loadings for vented *drains* must not exceed the values given in Table DF6.8.2 B for the size and grade of the *drain* shown.

DRAINS				
Nominal pipe size (mm)				n)
Grade	80	100	125	150
1 in 20	215	515	1450	2920
1 in 30	140	345	1040	2200
1 in 40	100	255	815	1790
1 in 50	76	205	665	1510
1 in 60	61	185	560	1310
1 in 70	50	140	485	1180
1 in 80	42	120	425	1040
1 in 90	х	x	380	935
1 in 100	, <b>x</b>	x	340	855
1 in 120	х	x	x	725
1 in 150	x	x	x	595

Note: x indicates that the combination of nominal size and grade is not permitted.

(c) Reduced grades

Where the minimum grades given in Table DF6.8.2A are not achievable *drains* may be laid at the reduced grades given in Table DF6.8.2 C. In such a case the minimum *fixture unit* loadings given in

the Table must be connected in advance of the top end of the reduced grade. Where even these reduced grades cannot be achieved provision must be made for regular and automatic flushing of the *drain*.

#### TABLE DF6.8.2 C MINIMUM FIXTURE UNIT LOADINGS FOR REDUCED GRADE DRAINS

Reduced -	Nominal pipe size (mm)				
grade	80 100 125		125	150	
	Minimum <i>fixture unit</i> loading				
1 in 70	9	10	See TableDF6.8.2A		
1 in 80	10	18		"	
1 in 90	x	х	27		
1 in 100	x	x	38	#	
1 in 120	x	х	x	75	
1 in 150	×	х	x	160	

- Note: x means that the grade is not permitted unless special automatic flushing arrangements are made.
- (d) A *drain* must not be oversized for the only purpose of using a lower gradient than the minimum gradient given in Table DF6.8.2A. The size of a *drain* must not reduce in the direction of flow.

#### DF6.8.3 Cover over drains

(a) Drains must be protected against any mechanical damage and deformation resulting from the loads over them. Adequate cover must be provided to comply with Table DF6.8.3 unless exempted under (b).

TABLE DF6.8.3 MINIMUM DEPTH OF COVER OVER DRAINS				
	Minimum cover from top of pipe socket to ground surface (mm)			
Location	Pipes of cast iron or ductile iron	Pipes of other materials		
Household driveways	300	450		
Other locations where no vehicular loadings are expected	Nil	300		

(b) Where it is not practical to provide the minimum cover to Table DF6.8.3, *drains* must be covered by a sandy overlay of at least 50 mm and provided with-

# DF6 SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

- (i) 75 mm thick concrete paving where light vehicular traffic may be expected; and
- (ii) 50 mm thick concrete paving at other locations where vehicular traffic is not expected.

The paving must be symmetric to the *drain* alignment and must have a minimum width equal to the depth of the base of the drain from the top of the paving plus 300 mm.

#### DF6.8.4 Drains close to buildings

(a) *Drains* under buildings

Where it cannot reasonably be avoided *drains* may be laid below ground under buildings in which case-

- inspection openings must be provided at both ends of the *drain* adjacent to the building; and
- a minimum of 50 mm of sandy overlay provided over the pipe and below a reinforced concrete floor slab; or
- (iii) the drain must be protected from damage.
- (b) Proximity of buildings
  - where a *drain* is to be laid parallel to a footing the excavation for it must clear a line at 45° from the extremity of the footing. (See Figure 6.8.4)

(c) Building over drains

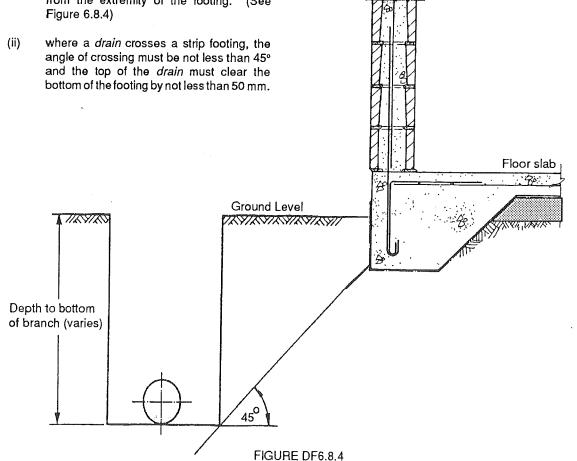
Where it is not practical to divert *drains* in order to avoid erecting buildings over them -

- (i) the restrictions listed in (a) and (b) must be observed; and
- (ii) other appropriate engineering precautions taken against damage.

## DF6.9 Gully traps other than floor waste gullies.

Gully traps may be used;

- (a) as overflow relief gullies to provide in the event of sewage surcharge; or
- (b) to provide disconnection between waste discharges and the remainder of the sewerage installation (disconnector gullies).
- DF9.1 General
- (a) A gully must be installed such that -
  - (i) it is supported on a minimum 75 mm thickness of concrete of 17.5 MPa grade; and
  - (ii) it is protected from damage at floor level by a concrete surround of minimum width and depth of 75 mm.



## SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

- (b) The following discharges must not be allowed into a gully:
  - (i) from any *soil fixture*; and
  - (ii) any rain water drainage from the roof or ground.
- (c) The gully must have its water seal maintained from a waste fixture or floor waste gully. The maximum length of unvented waste pipe discharging into the gully must be 2.5 m from basins or bidets, 6 m from all other waste gullies and fixtures with DN50 or smaller pipes, and 8.5 m from floor waste gullies and fixtures with DN65 or larger pipes.

#### DF6.9.2 Overflow relief gullies

At least one overflow relief gully must be installed in a *drain* which is connected to a public *sewer*.

(a) Size

The size of the overflow relief gully is related to the size of the main *drain*. For a size of main *drain* of DN80 the gully must also be DN80. For main *drains* of DN100 to 150 size, the gully must be DN100.

(b) Location

An overflow relief gully must be located within the property, external to the building, as far as practicable from the downstream end of the *drain*, and so that the top of the gully is accessible and positioned where any overflow can be easily noticed.

(c) Height

1

A minimum height of 150 mm must be kept between the top of the overflow gully riser and the lowest fixture connected to the *drain*. The point of measurement on fixtures is given in Table DF6.9.2.

#### TABLE DF6.9.2 POINT OF MEASUREMENT OF FIXTURES FOR HEIGHT ABOVE OVERFLOW LEVEL OF GULLY

Fixture	Point of measurement
<i>Soil fixture</i> with integral trap	Level of water seal surface
Floor waste gully or shower outlet	Top surface level of grate
Other fixtures	Top surface level of fixture outlet

## DF6.9.3 Disconnector gully traps

Where installed within a building these must:

- (a) have the gully riser extend to floor level and be sealed with an airtight removable cover; and
- (b) a DN50 vent pipe must branch from the riser at an upward grade of not less than 1 in 80 and terminate with a grating at an external wall of the building above any likely flood level. Alternately the vent pipe can terminate as in DF6.7.3(a). No other fixture or appliance must be connected to the vent pipe.

## DF6.10 Floor waste gullies

Floor waste gullies are functionally similar to fixture water traps. Shower outlets may be used as floor waste gullies. Any *waste fixture* may be connected to a floor waste gully. No trap is *required* other than for discharge outlets from basins. For other than basins the maximum length of the untrapped waste pipe must not exceed 1.2 m. If any of the fixtures is trapped, the maxium length of the waste pipe is allowed to be up to 2.5 m. However, the traps must not be vented. With the exception of allowed fixture pairs, each fixture must connect individually with the gully at a grade of not less than 1 in 40.

# DF6.10.1 Size

The outlet size of a floor waste gully trap is based on the total *fixture units* of the fixtures and appliances discharging into it. The outlet size must be:

- (a) DN50 for a total *fixture unit* rating of 3 units or less; and
- (b) DN65 to DN100 for a total *fixture unit* rating of 10 or less.

A DN50 outlet and a DN50 riser may be used if the sole function of the gully is to dispose of water spillage and washdown water. All other gullies must have a minimum riser size of DN80 at floor level. A floor waste gully must have an accessible, removable grate.

# DF6.10.2 Height of gully riser

The minimum height of the gully riser from the top of the water seal to the floor surface must comply with Table DF6.10.2. The maxium height must not exceed 600 mm.

TABLE DF6.10.2         MINIMUM HEIGHT OF FLOOR WASTE GULLY RISERS				
Minimum height from water seal to floor level (mm)				
Fixture connected	Waste pipe entry at 88.5°	Waste pipe entry at 45°		
Shower	150	100		
Bath (only one)	250	200		
Clothes washing machine	300	250		
Other waste fixtures	250	150		

#### DF6.10.3 Maintenance of water seal

At least one *waste fixture* must be connected to any floor waste gully in order to maintain the water seal. For this reason the minimum depth of water seal must be 65 mm or the values in DF6.4.1, whichever is more.

#### DF6.11 Inspection openings

#### DF6.11.1 General

Inspection openings comprise:

- (a) inspection branches or square junctions; or
- (b) inspection chambers.

#### DF6.11.2 Location

Inspection openings must be provided:

- (a) outside the building on each branch connecting one or more water closet pans;
- (b) at intervals of not more than 30 m;
- downstream and upstream ends of any section of drain that passes under a building;
- (d) where any new section of *drain* is connected to an existing *drain*; and
- (e) at the connection to the public sewer.

Appropriate locations are illustrated in Figure DF6.11.2.

#### DF6.11.3 Size

- (a) The size of inspection branches or square junctions must be:
  - (i) the same size as the *drain* for drains up to DN150; and

- (ii) not less than DN150 for larger drains.
- (b) The dimensions of inspection chambers must comply with Table DF6.11.3.

TABLE DF6.11.3 SIZE OF INSPECTION CHAMBERS					
Minimum internal measurement (mm) Depth to floor Rectangular Circular					
of chamber	Length Width		Diameter		
Less than 600 600 to 900 More than 900	600 900 1200	450 600 750	600 900 1050		

# DF6.11.4 Access for inspection branches and square junctions

Inspection branches and square *junctions* must be so located that it is possible to use them for inspection and for clearing obstructions in the associated sections of the *drain*. When located inside buildings inspection branches and square *junctions* must have their openings readily accessible. Such openings must have airtight removable caps or plugs with gaskets, rubber rings or such other accessories to maintain tightness. When the caps or plugs are removed for inspection/maintenance, the gasket/rubber ring must be replaced with a new one.

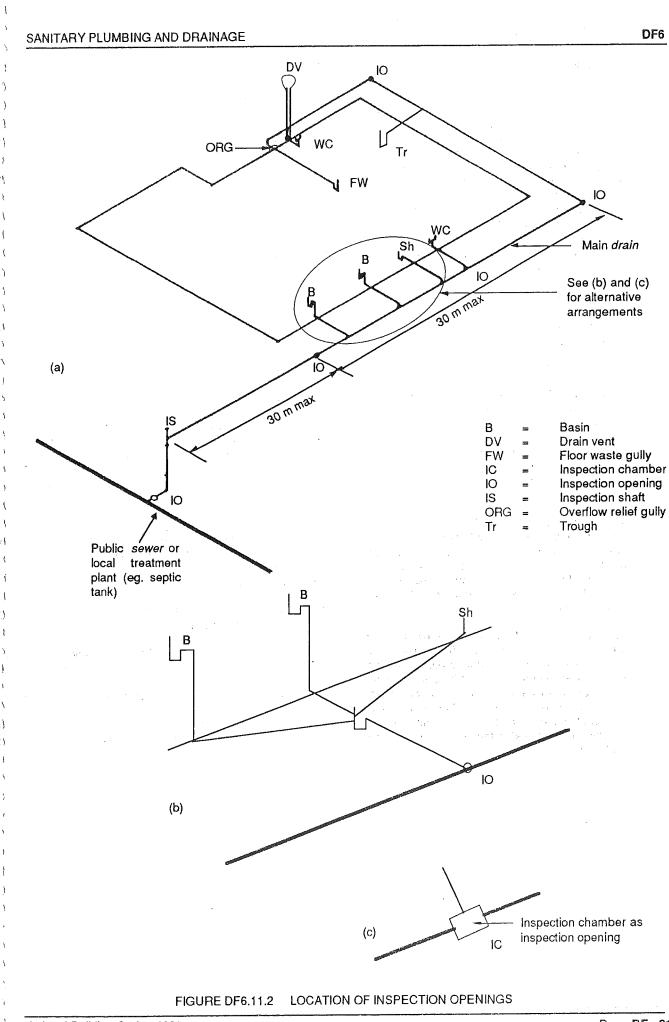
#### DF6.11.5 Construction of inspection chambers

# (a) Where required

An inspection chamber is *required* where an inspection branch or square junction:

- cannot accommodate all the convergent drains; or
- (ii) will not permit proper inspection or the clearing of obstructions.
- (b) Conduits and channels

The conduits in inspection chambers may be open channels of size and shape equal to the associated *drains*. The floor in inspection chambers must slope at a grade of between 1 in 10 and 1 in 15 towards the channel. Any formed junction must have a centre line radius of not less than 300 mm. A fall of at least 30 mm must be provided in the invert of any channel that curves through 45° or more.



# DF6 SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

(c) Access opening

A circular or rectangular access opening of 530 mm minimum dimension and fitted with a removable water tight cover must be provided at surface level. The cover must have been designed and installed to take any likely load on it. Where the size of the inspection chamber is larger than the size of the access opening, the top section of the chamber may be suitably tapered. Where this is done the full dimensions of the chamber must be maintained for a height from the chamber floor of at least 1.5 m, and the depth of the narrower shaft at the top not exceed 350 mm. The minimum dimension of the shaft except at the opening must be 600 mm.

(d) Access ladder

Where the depth of the chamber exceeds 1.2 m rungs or rung ladders must be provided to AS 1657.

(e) Materials of construction

Inspection chambers must have their base and walls of a minimum thickness of 150 mm and constructed of :

- (i) base concrete; and
- (ii) walls concrete or fully grouted concrete block masonry.

The concrete must be of 20 MPa grade. The walls and base must be suitably reinforced if *required*. The channels may be formed of half sections of pipes and fittings. Any access rungs or ladder must be of galvanised steel. The cover and any frame to seal it must be of reinforced concrete or cast iron with safe lifting devices.

The walls and base of any inspection chamber must be cement rendered to a smooth finish. The render may contain a suitable water proofing agent to ensure a waterproof finish. Where there is any likelihood of seepage of sub-soil water into the manhole the external surfaces of the wall must be plastered to a waterproof finish or a suitable water proofing agent added to the concrete in the walls and base. (f) Inserts

The contact area between pipes or fittings and t walls formed around them, as well as holes brok into or formed in the walls of inspection chambe for insertion of pipes or fittings must be made wa tight by -

- the application of a suitable bonding age around the pipes;
- caulking the annular space between the w and the pipe or fitting with a stiff mix of or part cement and 2 parts sand;
- (iii) sealing with an epoxy based or other suitab sealant; or
- (iv) a combination of these methods.

#### DF6.11.6 Junctions

- (a) Junctions of drains must -
  - be swept in the direction of flow or have a oblique *junction* fitting with an upstream angle of no more than 60°;
  - (ii) not be Y *junctions* in the horizontal plane and
  - (iii) where unequal *junctions* are used have th soffit of the branch in level with or high∉ than the soffit of the larger size.
- (b) Square junctions in drains must only be used:
  - (i) at the connection of an inspection shaft to graded *drain*;
  - (ii) as the inlet riser of a gully or a floor waster gully;
  - (iii) as an inspection opening; or
  - (iv) at the top of a drop *junction* in place of a bend and inspection opening.

# **ROOF DRAINAGE**

#### DF7.1 Design of roof gutters

(a) Roof gutters where provided must be sized using the information given in Table DF7.1.

TABLE DF7.1 GUTTER SIZES					
	Ro	of catchm	ent area	(m²)	
	10	20	50	100	
Type of gutter	Required cross-sectional area of gutter (mm <sup>2</sup> )				
Eaves gutter	1250	2200	4550	8100	
Internal box and valley gutter	1480	2570	5360	9320	

#### Notes:

١

3

١

3

ì

1

(

ł

3

١

1

4

١

- (1) The roof catchment area is the area of the roof drained by one downpipe. It is taken as the area of the roof from ridge to gutter between two adjacent downpipes.
- (2) Values can be interpolated for catchment areas falling between the given figures.
- (3) The gutter sizes do not include any allowance for freeboard. A freeboard of 25 mm for eaves gutters and 35 mm for internal box gutters must be added to the cross-sections derived from the table.
- (b) Gutters must have a minimum slope of:
  - (i) 1 in 500 for eaves gutters; and
  - (ii) 1 in 200 for internal box gutters.

These slopes must be increased where there is any material risk of clogging of the gutters and downpipes with leaves and other such matter.

## Note:

With high fronted eaves with facia boards there could be overflow from the back of the gutter into the building if the downpipes or gutters are blocked. One method of preventing such overflow is by providing drainage slots along the front of the gutter at a level lower than the back edge. Another method would be to provide sumps and weirs at the ends of the gutter or where the downpipes take off. The risk of overflow into the building from any internal box gutter can be reduced by providing sumps and weirs at the ends of the gutter.

# DF7.2 Design of downpipes

The minimum area of cross-section of a downpipe must be the greater of:

- (a) half the area of cross-section of the gutter it serves; or
- (b) the area calculated for each 10 m<sup>2</sup> of the roof area drained by it at the rate of:
  - (i) 650 mm<sup>2</sup> for eaves gutters; and
  - (ii) 930 mm<sup>2</sup> for internal box gutters.

#### DF7.3 Incompatible metals for gutters

Direct contact between the following metals must be avoided in order to prevent corrosion:

Zinc or aluminium	}	{copper or copper alloys
and	} and	
alloys of either	)	{ some grades of stainless
,	•	{ steel.

# DF7 ROOF DRAINAGE

.

# LATRINES FOR AREAS WHERE THERE IS NO PIPED WATER SUPPLY

#### 1. Scope

}

9

)

١

1

ţ

`\

1

5

1

'n

ŧ

)

5

This Specification sets out the requirements in relation to the location and types of latrines in areas where there is no piped water supply.

#### 2. Precautions

Care must be exercised to ensure that:

- (a) disease transmitting flies and other insects do not have access to the excreta.
- (b) there is no nuisance to the public or the neighbours.
- (c) the sub-soil water is not polluted if it is likely to be used for domestic purposes.
- (d) the biological oxygen demand (BOD) of any resulting effluent is limited to the requirements of the Department of Health so that streams rivers and oceans are not polluted.

#### 3. Location

The latrines must be screened from public view and be located not less than:-

- (a) 30 metres from any well or other similar potable source of water.
- (b) 6 metres from the front or street boundary of the allotment.
- (c) 3 metres from any boundary other than the front or street boundary.
- (d) 3 metres from any dwelling within or outside the allotment.

#### 4. Types of latrines

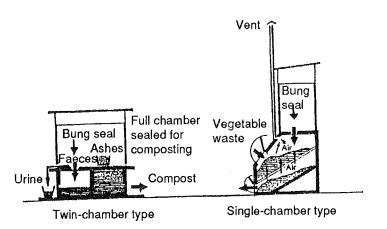
The following disposal methods can be used .

- 1. Dry on-site treatment: dry pit latrines and composting latrines.
- 2. Wet on-site treatment: wet pit latrines, aqua privies, septic tanks, and biogas plants.

All these disposal methods rely on the reduction of BOD by aerobic bacteria (where free oxygen is available) and/or anaerobic bacteria (where free oxygen is excluded).

4.1 Composting Latrines (Fig 4.1) are of two types, the single-vault continuous operation type and alternative twin-vault batch systems such as the WHO Vietnamese design.

Continuous-operation types utilize aerobic bacteria to act on excreta and vegetable wastes suspended on a rack above the floor of the ventilated vault. Urine is evaporated off or drained away. As the mixture decomposes, it falls through the rack and is removed for use as fertilizer.





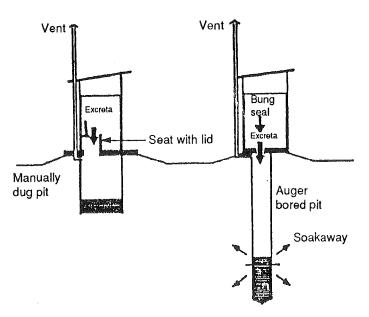


FIGURE 4.2 DRY (NONFLUSH) PIT LATRINES

# DF2.1 LATRINES FOR AREAS WHERE THERE IS NO PIPED WATERSUPPLY

In the alternating twin-vault type, one vault at a time receives excreta. Urine is drained away in a separate surface channel. The excreta are covered with loose earth, ashes, or sawdust to reduce odors. When the vault is nearly full, it is sealed with lime mortar and left for a few months to compost by anaerobic bacterial action. Contents are then removed and used for fertilizer. During this time the other vault is used as the latrine. Both types work best in warm climates and with little or no urine loading.

4.2 Dry Pit Latrines have no ilushing facility (Fig 4.2). They are manually dug pits or mechanically bored holes a few meters deep over which a squatting plate with a bung seal or seat with lid is placed. These latrines operate more efficiently when the bottom of the pit is below the water table, which allows excreta to be decomposed by anaerobic bacteria below water level and to soak away into the surrounding ground. However this could lead to the pollution of potable water sources in the area. Gases generated, such as methane, are vented through a tall vent pipe. When pits are dry, a combination of anaerobic and aerobic decomposition takes place. When a pit is almost full, the surface cover is removed and the top of the pit filled with a mixture of lime and earth. A new pit is then dug.

**4.3** Wet Pit Latrines are bucket-flushed, water-seal, floor-pan latrines with a soak-away pit in porous soil. Digestion of excreta is by anaerobic bacteria below water level. The lower section of the pit is lined to retain water when the pit does not reach the water table. Gases from the digestion are vented through a tall pipe.

For more details of dry pit and wet pit latrines see Annexure 1 to this Specification.

4.4 Aqua Privies (Fig 4.4) are simplified septic tanks with a single chamber and without a full flush pan. Where bucket-flushed squat plates are used, excreta enters the tank through a short pipe that penetrates below the surface of the liquid in the tank to minimise odours. Alternately,

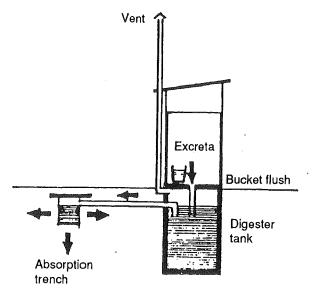


FIGURE 4.4 AQUA PRIVY

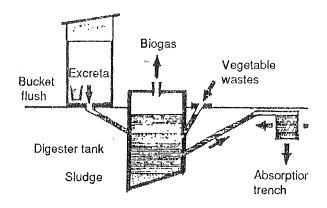


FIGURE 4.6 BIOGAS DIGESTER

excreta may enter through a low-volume, water seal, bucketflushed floor trap set in the squat plate. Decomposition is by anaerobic bacteria below water level in a permanent tank, which periodically requires desludging. Gases generated in this process of decomposition are vented through a tall vent pipe. Excess effluent from the tank is drained to absorption trenches.

**4.5** Septic Tanks can be either single or double chamber. They are generally used with full cistern flush waterseal pans. Single-chamber designs use anaerobic digestion; in double-chamber designs the second chamber is ventilated and uses aerobic bacteria for digestion. The permanent tanks need desludging periodically. The effluent is piped into absorption trenches. For details of septic tanks see Annexure 2 to this Specification.

**4.6** Biogas (Gobar Gas) Digestors (Fig 4.6) operate similarly to a single-chamber anaerobic septic tank, but provision is made to trap the gas, which is largely methane, given off during digestion. The methane gas can be used as fuel for cooking and lighting buildings. For efficient gas production, the contents of the digester tank should have a carbon: nitrogen ratio of approximately 30:1. Vegetable wastes are usually added to the excrement to raise the carbon content in the tank. Excess effluent from the tank is often drained into ponds, where algae are grown as feed for domestic animals such as ducks. The digestor tank requires desludging periodically.

The choice of latrine is determined by local ground conditions, rainfall, water table, water supply, ground temperature range, and social, cultural, and religious influences within the community.

# **PIT LATRINES**

# 1 Introduction

)

3,

1

7

}

1

1

}

١

١

١

ł

}

۶ ۱

1

۱

١

(

{

۱

1

Pit latrines can be of two types - dry pit and wet pit.

This specification covers the details of both. When correctly constructed and maintained according to this specification and details available from the Health Department, the nuisance from flies and bad odour could be substantially reduced.

#### 2 Location

Pit latrines whether wet or dry must be located:

- (a) at least 30m away from any well or other potable source of water if the pit does not go through any fissured rock or coral;
- (b) 3 m from any dwelling within or outside the allotment;
- (c) 6 m from any boundary with a street;
- (d) 3 m from boundaries other than with a street;
- (e) preferably at a lower ground than where a potable source of water is located;
- (f) such that it is accessible to the household at all times; and
- (g) so that the prevailing wind around the latrine is not shaded.

Where the pit penetrates through fissured rock or coral through which liquids from the pit might pass unfiltered, the advice of the Health Department must be sought on the location. Otherwise all the fissures must be closed with concrete or cement mortar.

The site must be on firm ground which will not cave in or slump while digging the pit. If there is some problem in this regard, one solution could be to line the affected area with an old drum with both ends removed. The site should not be subject to flooding or remain water-logged.

#### 3 Calculation of dimensions

The pit volume depends on the number of users, the period for which it is used and a freeboard allowance of 0.5 m depth. If the pit remains dry the annual accumulation of sludge is about  $0.08 \text{ m}^3$ /person. In wet pit latrines or where washing water is allowed to enter it, the accumulation rate could be taken as  $0.05 \text{ m}^3$ .

For example, for a family or 5 which plans to use the pit for 5 years, the volume required to hold the sludge would be:

For a dry pit-  $5 \times 0.08 \times 5 = 2.0 \text{ m}^3$ 

For a pit area of 0.6 m x 1.0 m,

the depth required for the sludge = 2.0/(0.6 x 1.0 )= 3.3 m

Add freeboard allowance	= 0.5 m
Total depth required	= <u>3.8</u> ៣
74	4

For a wet pit, the volume of sludge

х	0.05	х	5	= 1	.25	m³
---	------	---	---	-----	-----	----

For a pit diameter of 600mm, area of cross-section =  $0.6 \times 0.6 \times 3.14/4 = 0.28 \text{ m}^2$ Depth of pit for sludge = 1.25/0.28 = 4.5 mAdd freeboard = 0.5 mTotal depth = 5.0 m

≖ 5

If these depths are considered impractical either the sectional size of the pit can be slightly increased (for instance, for 700mm diameter the depth of the pit would be 3.8m for a 5 year life) or the depth reduced to cater for a shorter life for the pit.

A cover slab of size 1.4 m x 1.0 m would be appropriate for the dimensions chosen for the dry pit if the sides of the pit are very stable; otherwise the size of the slab must be larger. The pit need not be rectangular in shape. It can be an auger bored circular pit of 600 to 700 mm diameter.

#### 4 Construction

#### 4.1 Digging the plt

The pit may be dug manually in which case it is usually rectangular or square. A power operated or hand auger can be used to dig circular pits. Whichever method is used care must be exercised to ensure that the dimensions at the top remain true. Otherwise there could be difficulty and additional cost in placing the cover slab.

Where it is necessary to close off any fissures or crevices in rock or coral in the pit, the pit dimensions must be sufficient for someone to be lowered down to do the work. Great care must be exercised in lowering anyone. A safety rope must be used and at the first sign of any cave- in or other problem others on top must promptly pull the person from out of the pit. If the fissures are large concrete to a mix or 1 part cement, 2 parts clean sand and 4 parts gravel/ coral/stones must be used to close them. If not use cement mortar with 1 part cement and 2 parts sand. The concrete or mortar must be to a stiff mix.

#### 4.2 Foundation

The foundation provides a sealed support for the cover slab and raises it above the surrounding ground. The foundation may be cast in concrete or be made up of concrete block masonry or durable timber. The ground around the pit must be levelled and preferably raised with a layer of gravel, coral or earth before pouring/erecting the foundation.

# DF2.1 PIT LATRINES

#### 4.3 Cover slab

Cover slabs are of two types:

- (a) squat type with small platforms for the feet; or
- (b) a pedestal type on which the user can sit.

Figures 4.3 A and B give some details of the cover slab.

The cover slab must be placed over the foundation so that it is fully supported without any gaps. Cement mortar may be used to firmly seat the slab over the foundation. The finished surface of the slab must be at least 150 mm above the immediate surrounds.

# 4.4 Vent pipe

A 100mm PVC vent pipe may be erected over the pit to remove foul gases generated by the decomposition of the waste matter. The squat slab has a matching PVC insert shown in Figures 4.4A and 4.5 on which the vent pipe can be erected. The vent pipe must be supported to the frame of the shed over the pit. One way of strapping the pipe is also shown in Figure 4.4A. The vent pipe must be at least 2.5 m high and 500 mm above the roof at the point of penetration or the nearest point. The open end of the vent must be covered with durable fly screen to prevent flies and mosquitoes from entering the pit (Figure 4.4B).

Mosquitoe breeding inside the pit is not a likely problem where a pour-flush water seal is used over the cover slab (see figure 4.3B). In the case of a squat slab a wooden bung seal can be used to cover the squat hole when it is not being used. This would prevent mosquitoes and flies from gaining entry into the pit. In the case of seats without a water seal, a folding lid can be used to keep it covered when it is not in use.

It is good to extend the squat hole or (seat without water seal) into the pit by about 300mm by using an insert. This would reduce the chances of the foul gases escaping through the hole rather than through the vent. (When the restricted space in the shed gets hot from the sun, foul gases would tend to escape through the hole in the slab rather than through the vent).

# 4.5 The shed

A typical shed is shown in Figure 4.5. Although it could be built of any locally available material, it should be durable and firmly held down. Otherwise it could be blown away during cyclones and act as a wind-borne missile. The shed must afford privacy and have good ventilation. Good ventilation would keep the shed less hot in summer and thereby reduce the chances of foul gases escaping through the hole in the cover slab. The interior of the shed must be shaded from too much light as flies are attracted to light.

# 5 Maintenance

The pit latrine must be kept clean at all times. However do not use strong disinfectants in large quantities. It is best to use a wet mop or wet rag soaked in diluted disinfectant or cleaning agent to clean the cover slab and seat. If chemicals and cleaning agents are allowed inside the pit, they would drastically affect the bacterial degradation of the waste matter and there could be problems with foul smells and the pit could be filled sooner.

Any erosion of the fill around the foundation must be noted and repaired. The fly screen cover over the vent pipe must also be checked periodically and replaced promptly if damaged. The shed over the pit must be kept in good repair.

# 6 Pit closure

When the pit is full to within about 0.5 m of the cover slab it must not be used any more. Another pit must be located at least 3 m away (the deeper the pit, the greater the separation distance). The cover slab, vent pipe, and shed can be re-used over the new pit.

The remaining space in the old pit must be filled with earth. It is good to over-fill and form a mound so that enough surples earth is available when the material subsides with decomposition. The pit can be dug out after a minimum period of one year and the material safely used as a fertiliser. PIT LATRINES

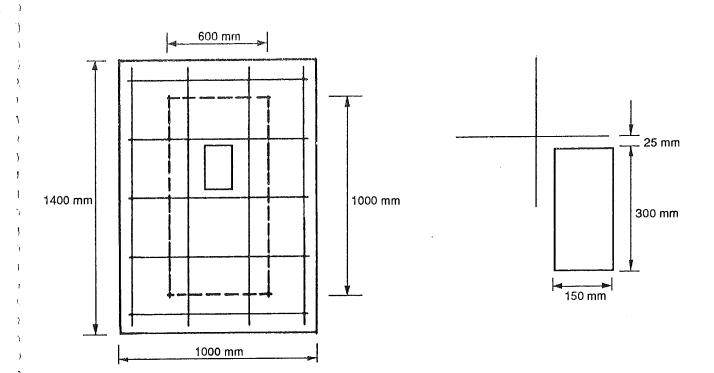
1

١

)

1

1



Note: All reinforcement 10 mm bars with 20 mm cover

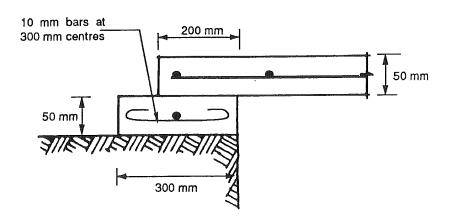
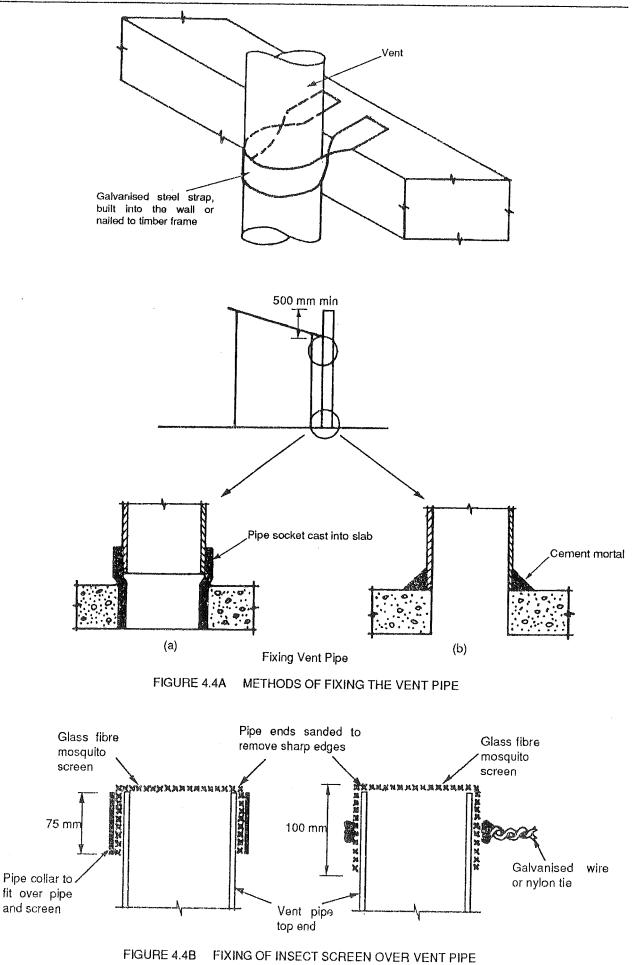
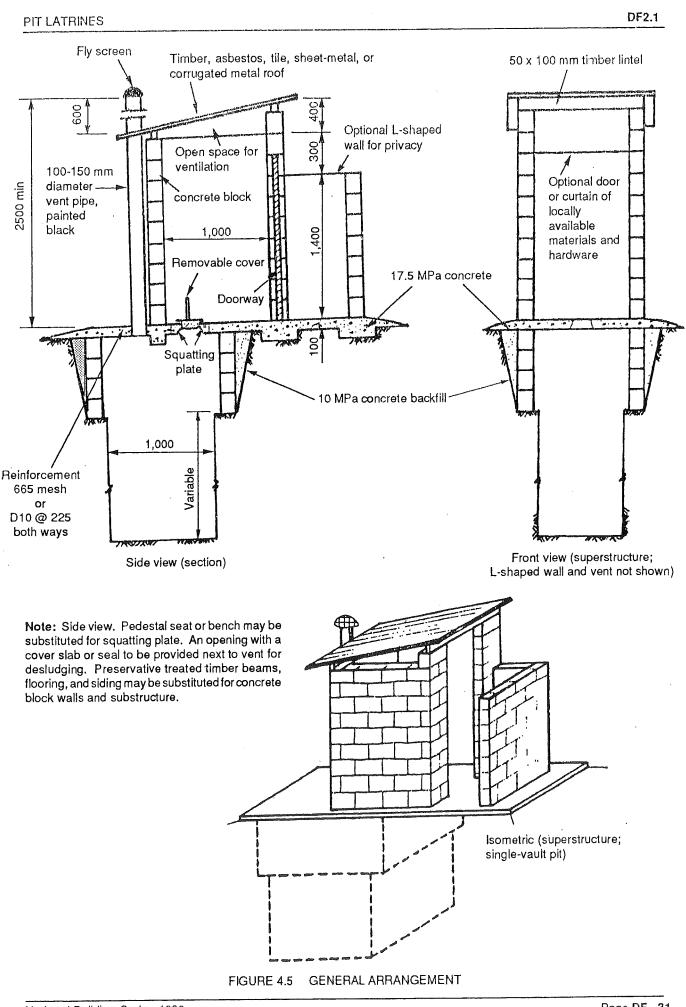


FIGURE 4.3A DETAILS OF SQUAT TYPE COVER SLAB





# SEPTIC TANKS FOR DOMESTIC USE

#### 1 Function of a septic tank

The basic function of a household septic tank is to receive normal liquid household wastes and to condition them for such a time, and in such a manner, that the clarified effluent may be percolated efficiently into the subsoil, where it is absorbed and evaporated. In order to perform this basic function, all septic tanks must fulfill the following requirements:

# (a) Remove solids

A septic tank must have a primary or liquefying chamber of such shape and size that the rate of flow of all sewage is so reduced that at least the larger solids sink to the bottom and are retained and the clarified effluent is discharged. The inlet and outlet pipes of this primary chamber must be so shaped and located that the scum which forms on the surface of the sewage is not disturbed. The capacity of the tank is usually kept equal to the inflow during 24 hours to allow a day's retention.

#### (b) Promote bacterial action

To ensure that the solids and liquids in the tank will decompose it is necessary that the tank be designed so that either-

- a variety of bacteria anaerobic bacteria which thrive in the absence of free oxygen are present; or
- (ii) a variety of bacteria aerobic bacteria which thrive with access to air is also present.

A tank that is designed to achieve the purpose defined in (i) is a single-treatment septic tank, and a tank that is designed to achieve the purpose defined in (ii) is a double-treatment septic tank. A double-treatment tank is generally more expensive. Therefore details of only single-treatment tanks with or without aerobic filters will be included in this Specification.

(c) Store sludge

A fine silt-like sludge accumulates at the base of the primary tank. It follows that the primary tank must be of sufficient size to store sludge for a considerable period; otherwise, if the tank is not cleaned out at frequent intervals, the sludge will eventually be scoured from the tank and clog the outlet drain, the absorption trench or soil and an aerobic filter where provided.

#### 2 Location

Septic tanks and other connected works such as absorption trenches and soak pits must be located at a sufficient distance to prevent contamination of potable water sources and nuisance. Figure 2 shows typical layouts with the minimum separation distances marked on them. It will be seen that a minimum distance of 30 m is *required* between soak pits and potable water sources whereas this distance is only 15 m in the case of absorption trenches.

Another important consideration in the siting of a septic tank is that an adequately absorbent area must be available for discharging the effluent through absorption trenches or soak pits.

#### 3 Construction

**3.1** Septic tanks may be of reinforced concrete or of reinforced block masonry walls over a reinforced concrete base. Tanks of precast concrete construction may be made from rectangular slabs which are assembled on the site, or be of cylindrical construction, either as a single cylinder open at the top, or a stack of short, open-ended cylinders. There are also prefabricated septic tanks made of fibre glass.

**3.2** Whatever form of construction or materials are used for the sides and bottoms of septic tanks the resulting work must be impervious to water. For tanks of rectangular section, it is important that all internal angles be well-rounded, so as to minimize shrinkage cracking. Leakage at the corners of tanks of precast concrete construction made from rectangular slabs, or at the joints of precast tanks made from a number of open-ended cylinders, must be detected and corrected in advance.

**3.3** Every septic tank of block masonry or concrete construction must be covered with reinforced concrete slabs and removable manhole covers fitted over every compartment. The manholes are used when it is necessary to pump out or otherwise clean the tanks. Inspection openings are also required over the inlet and outlet square *junctions.* The aerobic filter where provided must be filled with hard, impervious and durable stone, coral or gravel. These must be graded from 60 mm to 75 mm.

#### 3.4 Design details

The design of the type of septic tank system to be installed will be governed by the results of the investigations of the site and locality, taken in conjunction with the results of the percolation test discussed in clauses 5.2 and 5.3. Where the soil is of a suitable type and is sufficiently absorbent, and where the absorption area is sufficiently large to dispose of the final effluent, a single treatment septic tank

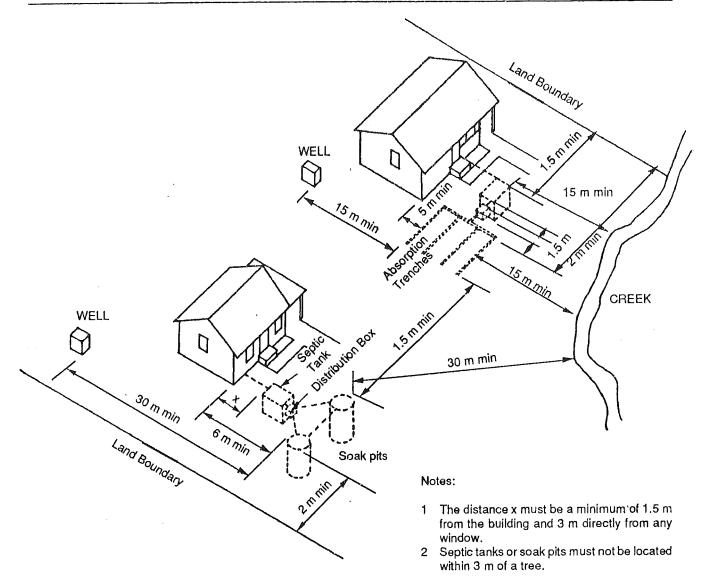


FIGURE 2 TYPICAL LOCATION OF SEPTIC TANK SYSTEMS WITH MINIMUM REQUIRED SEPARATION DISTANCES

will be suitable. If there is any doubt about the porosity of the site and that the effluent might seep on to adjoining premises or public places, then an aerobic filter must be installed with a septic tank. A surface area of one square metre of filtering materials must be provided in aerobic filters for up to every 0.9 m<sup>3</sup> of flow of sewage per day. This works out to about 1 m<sup>3</sup> of filter for 50 m<sup>3</sup> of daily flow of sewage.

Figures 3.4A, B and C and Tables 3.4A and B give details of the dimension required of built-in-situ septic tanks. Table 3.4A also gives the volume of 60-75 mm stones for any aerobic filter that may be provided.

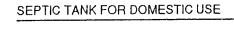
**3.5** Figure 3.5 shows an arrangement for aerobic filters. The filter chamber can also serve as a distribution box for the absorption trenches.

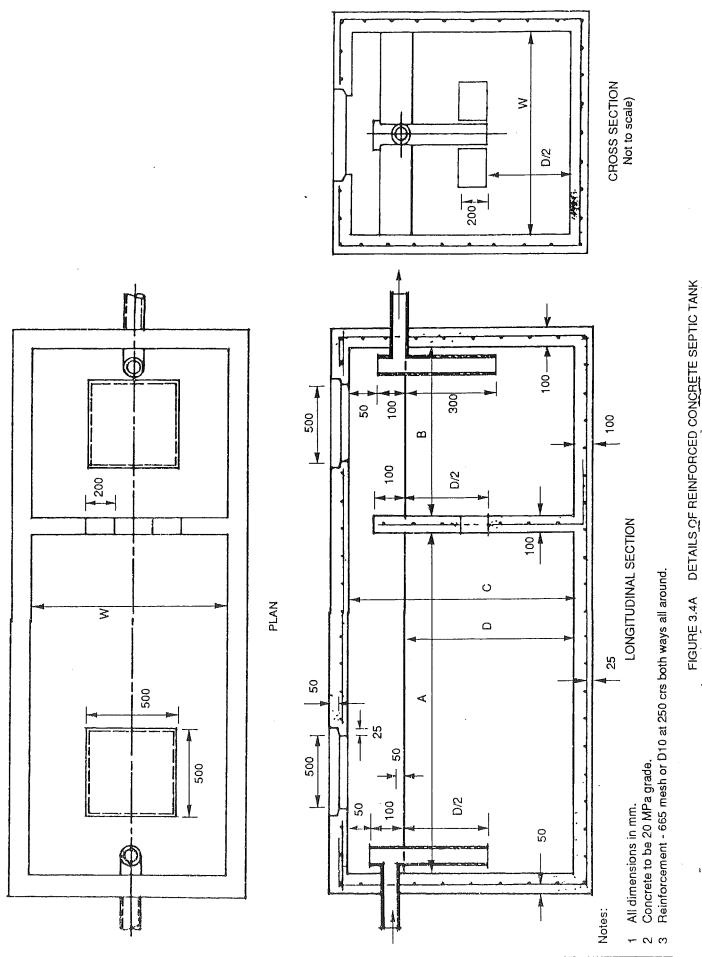
#### 4 Grease traps

**4.1** The satisfactory disposal of the discharge from kitchen *waste fixtures* is frequently difficult because it is charged with grease which cannot be satisfactorily dealt with in a septic tank. This difficulty may be overcome by a grease trap located near the kitchen through which all discharge from the kitchen must pass before entering the *drain* to the septic tank. For satisfactory working of the trap it is necessary that both laundry and roof waters, and liquid and powder detergents, be exculded from it. A grease trap constructed as shown in FIg. 4.1 has been found effective in arresting grease. Alternatively, a smaller precast concrete or other type of grease trap may be installed.

The capacity of the grease trap below the level of the invert of the outlet must be not less than the total capacity of the sinks and dishwashers served. The cover over the trap should be removable to facilitate the cleaning of the trap.

و الم





Page DF - 34

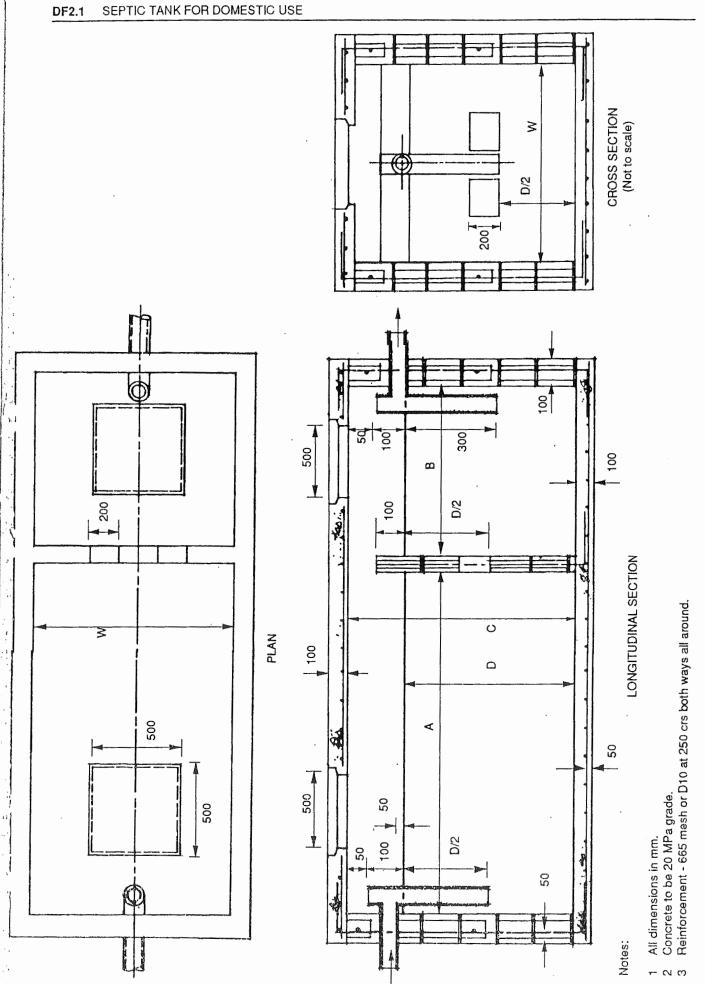
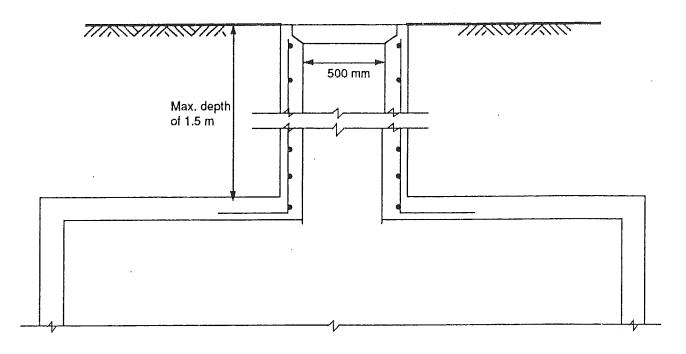


FIGURE 3.48 DETAILS OF REINFORCED BLOCK MASONRY SEPTIC TANK

Page DF - 35



Reinforced concrete cover slab Cement mortar



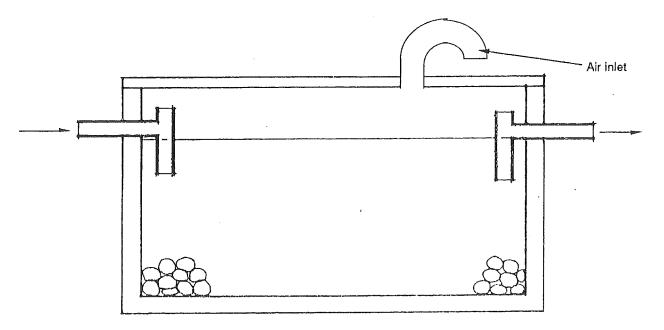


FIGURE 3.5 AEROBIC FILTER

# TABLE 3.4A

SEPTIC TANK DIMENSIONS AND VOLUMES OF AEROBIC FILTER

No. of	ONLY SOIL WASTE						
Persons	А	В	С	D	W	V (m <sup>3</sup> )	F(m <sup>3</sup> )
8	1000	400	1000	850	800	0.95	0.02
10	1000	600	1000	850	800	1.22	0.02
12	1000	600	1000	850	800	1.22	0.02
15	1000	600	1200	1050	800	1.34	0.03
25	1200	800	1200	1050	1000	2.10	0.05
50	1600	800	1400	1250	1000	3.00	0.06
100	2400	1200	1400	1250	1200	5.40	0.11
150	2600	1400	1600	1450	1400	8.12	0.16
200	3000	1600	1600	1450	1600	10.67	0.21
300	3400	1800	1800	1650	1800	15.44	0.31
400	4000	2200	1800	1650	2000	20.46	0.41
500	4200	2200	1800	1650	2400	25.34	0.51
600	4400	2400	2000	1850	2400	30.19	0.61

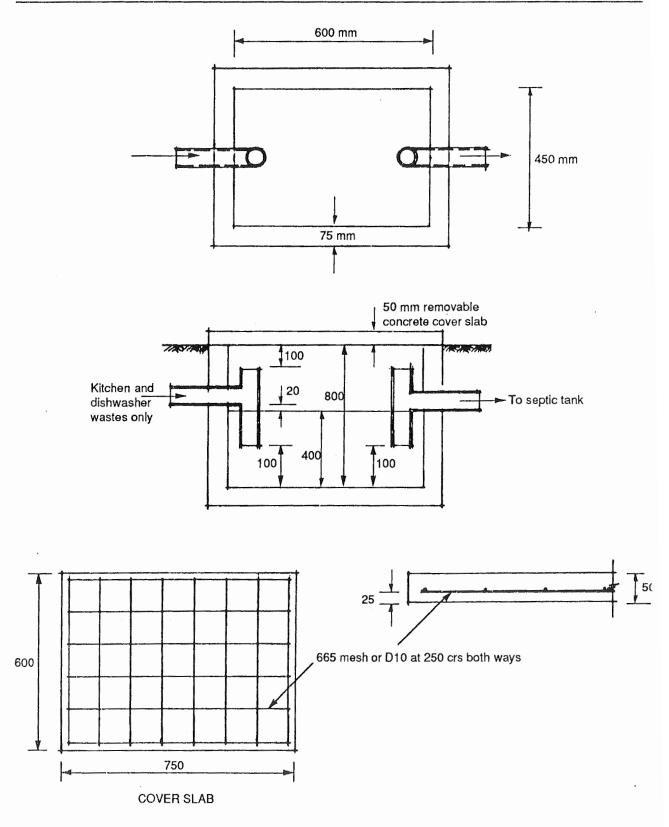
No. of	ALL DOMESTIC WASTE						
Persons	A	В	С	D	W	V (m <sup>3</sup> )	F(m <sup>3</sup> )
8	1400	800	1000	850	1000	1.87	0.04
10	1400	800	1200	1050	1000	2.31	0.05
12	1800	800	1200	1050	1000	2.73	0.06
15	1800	800	1200	1050	1200	3.28	0.07
25	2000	1200	1400	1250	1400	5.60	0.11
50	3200	1600	1600	1450	1600	11.14	0.22
100	4000	2000	1800	1650	2200	21.78	0.44
150	5000	2400	2000	1850	2400	32.86	0.66
200	5600	2400	2000	1850	3000	44.40	0.89
300	6600	3400	2000	1850	3600	66.60	1.33
400	8000	4000	2000	1850	4000	88.80	1.78
500	8200	4200	2000	1850	4800	110.11	2.20
600	9000	4800	4000	1850	5200	132.76	2.66

V = Volume of Septic Tank; F = Volume of Aerobic Filter; For details of A, B, C, D and W see Figures 3, 4A and B

# TABLE 3.4 B

## REINFORCEMENT FOR MASONRY SEPTIC TANKS

Block wall thickness	Height of Tank (m)	Vertical bars	Horizontal bars
	1.0	D10 @ 600	D12@600
150	1.2	D12@600	D12@600
	1.4	D12@400	D12@600
	1.6	D12 @ 400	D12@600
200	1.8	D16@600	D12@600
	2.0	D12 @ 400 fill all cells	D16 @ 600



Notes:

- 1 All dimensions in mm.
- 2 Concrete to be 20 MPa grade
- 3 Reinforcement 665 mesh or D10 at 250 crs both ways all around.

# FIGURE 4.1 DETAILS OF A GREASE TRAP

#### SEPTIC TANKS FOR DOMESTIC USE

4.2 If grease traps are not regularly cleared of the accumulated grease it would give rise to the blocking of *drains*, unsightly overflow through the sides of the cover slab of the trap and unpleasant odour.

#### 5 Effluent absorption area

ıł

t,

1

1

ć

3

٤.

1.

x

٤

¥

ş

į

**5.1** An important factor when considering the installation of a septic tank is is to determine whether the soil is suitable to absorb the effluent, and whether the soil is of adequate depth and area. Generally, it can be said that the most suitable soil for an absorption area is a sandy or silty loam, and the most unsuitable soil, hard impervious clay, or rock. Where an impervious stratum such as rock or clay is present, it may not be possible to provide an absorption trench. If the slope of the ground allows the provision of imported absorbent fill of sufficient thickness, it will still be possible to have a trench or soak pit.

5.2 The absorption rate of the soil may be ascertained by carrying out the following percolation test:

At a number of representative spots within the area to be used for installation of the absorption *drains*, dig holes 300 mm square to the depth of the absorption *drain*. Pour water into the holes to a depth of 150 mm or more, and allow the water to soak away. Again pour water into the holes to a depth of 150 mm and record the times taken for the surface of the water to fall 25 mm.

**5.3** The recommended dosage of effluent in litres per metre of absorption trench per day, according to the time taken for the water surface to fall 25 mm in the test is given in Table 5.3, and the minimum length of the absorption trench in metres may be determined from the formula at the base of the Table.

#### TABLE 5.3 LENGTH OF ABSORPTION TRENCH FOR DIFFERENT ABSORPTION RATES

Time for water level in test to fall by 25 mm (minutes)	Dosage of effluent in litres per metre of trench per day (E)
1 2	75 60
5	45
10	30
20	18
30	15
60	11

# NOTES:

 Length of absorption trench in metres = 1000 V/E, Where V is the volume given in cubic meters in Table 3.4A.

(b) If the time taken for a fall in level of 25 mm is more than 60 minutes the soil is not suited for absorption trench method of disposal.

## 6 Absorption trenches

**6.1** Typical dimensions for an absorption trench are approximately, width 450 mm and minimum depth of 400 mm. The trenches are packed with 75 mm size hard stone, gravel or coral to a height of 150 mm, over which a line of perforated pipes is laid along the centre of the trench, commencing about 300 mm from the beginning of the trench and thereafter running the full length of the trench. The drain pipe conveying the effluent to the trench extends into the trench and butts against the first perforated pipe.

**6.2** The joints between the pipes in the trench must not be sealed. The pipes should be surrounded and covered with 75 mm broken hard stone or hard coral to within a few millimetres from the top of the trench, over which should be placed a protective covering of old iron, bag, bark or the like, before covering the trench with soil or turf.

**6.3** The absorption trench may also be constructed of concrete slabs laid in such a manner that there are many vertical joints left open so as to allow the effluent to escape. Concrete slabs are used to cover the top of the trench, and these may themselves be covered by soil or turf.

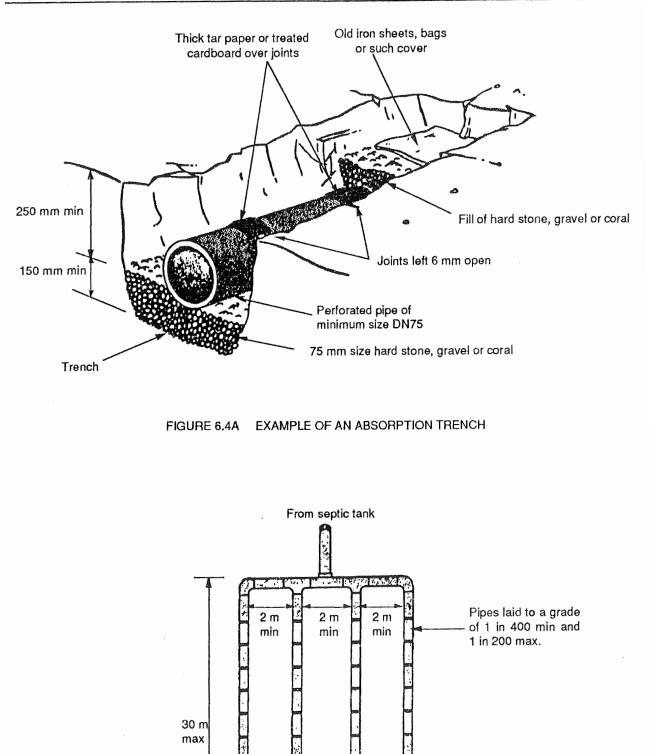
**6.4** The absorption trench should be constructed along the general contour of the ground. It must be so positioned that the prepared ground level at the trench is lower than the invert of the outlet pipe from the septic tank so as to prevent the effluent back-flooding into the septic tank. Typical absorption trenches are shown in Fig. 6.4 A and their general layout in Fig6.4 B.

6.5 Moisture-seeking shrubs or other vegetation planted in the vicinity of the trench will assist in the absorption of the effluent, but care should be taken in selecting the shrubs so that their roots are not likely to interfere with the efficiency of the trench. Roof water, and as far as possible surface and ground water, must be excluded from absorption trenches, so as to maintain their efficiency.

# 7 Soak pits

Where sufficient area for absorption trenches is not available, but there is sufficient depth of absorbent material, soak pits may be used. A typical arrangement is shown in Figure 7. Old bitumen drums with the ends removed are shown arranged in tiers. The drums are pierced at about 200 mm centres with a pick or so. They are surrounded by 75 mm hard stone, gravel or coral. The effluent is drained into the drums. The minimum thickness of stone surrounding the drums must be 300 mm. The actual dimensions of the soak pit will depend on the nature of the soil and the volume of effluent.

In general a soak pit is not as effective or desirable a means of disposal as absorption trenches.



**Note:** The trenches need not be parallel. Each line could follow a different contour.

FIGURE 6.4B GENERAL LAYOUT OF ABSORPTION TRENCH



DF2.1

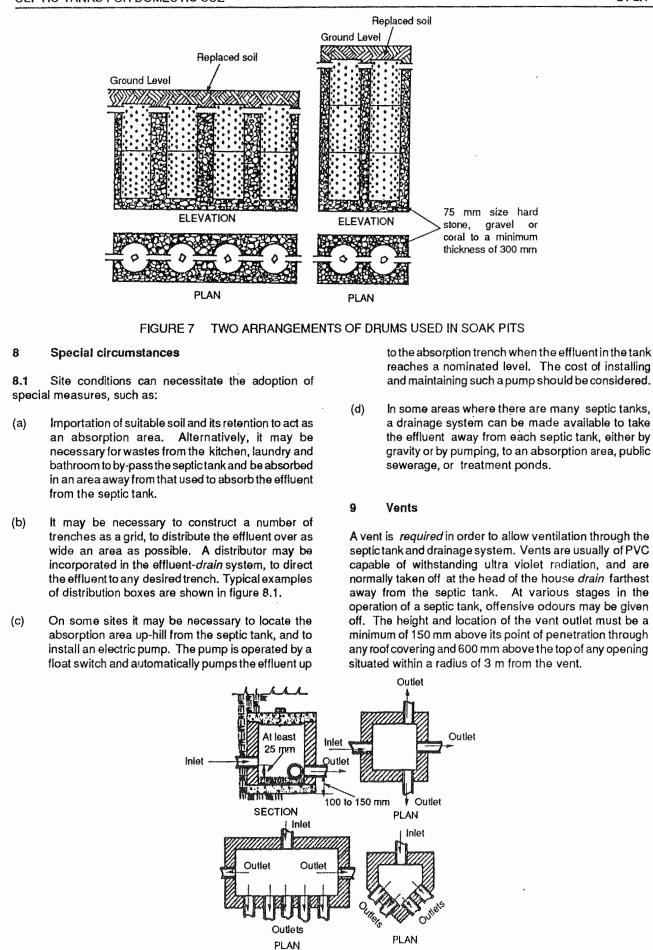


FIGURE 8.1 EXAMPLES OF DISTRIBUTION BOXES

# RAINWATER STORAGE

#### 1. Introduction

Rainwater collection from the roof depends on a number of factors. Unless these are suitably matched the supply would not be satisfactory. The factors are:

- (a) the average annual rainfall and its variability through the year;
- (b) the roofing material and the available area of the roof;
- (c) the daily rate of consumption of water;
- (d) the storage volume and the material of the tank; and
- (e) the desired reliability of the supply.

# 2. Relationship of rainfall, its variability, roof area and storage volume

The higher the average annual rainfall, the smaller the collection area of roof required for a given rate of consumption. In order to allow for variation in actual rainfall from the monthly averages, it is advisable to have the available roof area to be twice the theoretical area.

If the pattern of rainfall is fairly uniform through the year, the size of storage tank for a given rate of consumption would be relatively smaller. The tank size could be as small as to hold 50 days consumption where rainfall is quite uniform through the year. Where most (such as 75%) of the annual rainfall occurs in 3 or 4 months it will be necessary to size the tank to hold 100 to 120 days of consumption. This assumes that the available roof collection area is twice the theoretical area. Where the available roof area is less than about 1.4 times the theoretical area, the required storage volume tends to increase very steeply. The size of the tank determined from these considerations should normally give an average reliability of supply with a failure rate of about once every 5 years. If an average chance of failure of supply of once a year is acceptable, the calculated tank size can be reduced by about 30% in areas of high rainfall and by 40% in areas of lower rainfall.

#### 3. Design

The theoretical relationship outlined in para 2 can be expressed as:

A = 365 x C/R where

A is the roof area acting as the catchment in square metres,

C, the daily average consumption of water by the household in litres, and

R, the average annual rainfall in millimetres

However, for the reasons stated earlier the practical value of the roof catchment is:

A = 2 x 365 x C/R = 730 C/R

The average annual rainfall in Niue is 3175 mm. This rain is mostly spread over 4 months of the year from December to March. Therefore it is prudent to allow for 80 days storage in order to have an average risk of failure of supply of no more than once during any five year period.

Taking an average family size of 5 members, each consuming no more than 30 litres per day of the stored water, the storage volume

= 80 x 30 x 5 = 12000 litres = 12 kilolitres = 3400 gallons

The minmum roof area required to feed the storage tanks =  $730 \times 150/3175 = 35 \text{ m}^2$ 

If a risk of failure of supply once a year is acceptable the tank size can be reduced by 30%. If the rate of consumption is different from what has been assumed, the storage capacity and the roof area required can eacily be calculated.

#### 4. Effect of roofing material and the environment

Rainwater in general is very pure and hence many metals dissolve in it much faster than in land based water. For instance if any lead is used in the roof for flashing or in the form of lead-based paint, the rainwater would leach the lead into the storage tank. If this happened, the water would not be potable. The nature of the materials used in the roof must be ascertained and their safety confirmed before a decision is taken to use the run-off from the roof. In general galvanised iron sheets, zinc-aluminium coated sheets and a number of other products are safe.

As far as possible leaves and twigs must not be allowed to fall on the roof. The leached extracts from some leaves would make the water unfit for consumption. In addition the organic matter from leaves and twigs would encourage the growth of micro-organisms in the tank, thereby polluting the water. Accumulation of any dust on the roof, such as from industrial activity nearby would also make the water unfit.

#### RAINWATER STORAGE

#### 5. Tank material

1

t

iť

4

Tanks are generally made of galvanised or zinc-aluminium coated steel plates and sometimes of fibre glass. Whereas suitable fibre glass would be inert and therefore not affected by the rainwater, galavnised steel could. The greater the purity of the stored water, the greater the risk of the galvanising getting leached out very fast. If the roofing sheets are of galvanised steel, the stored water would already contain some of the zinc from the roofing material and hence the tank would last longer. This is not the case where the roofing is of zinc-aluminium coated or painted steel or of some other man-made material.

 In order to prevent the corrosive effects of pure rainwater on the tank coating, suitably formulated metaphosphates are commercially available. These produce a protective film inside the tank and thus extend the life of metal coated tanks. Such methods must be used from the very first filling of the tank. There are also plastic protective coatings compatible with potability which are applied to metal tanks. The inside of the tank must not be painted with any ordinary paint.

In no case must lead be used in any form such as in sheets for flashing or as paint etc on roofs from which water is collected.

#### 6. Erection of rainwater tanks

It is best to erect the tank in a shady location but away from falling leaves which could clog the strainer, and in the case of translucent material like fibre glass, have a dark colour to exclude light. Organic growth could develop on the sides of tanks in the presence of light and warmth. When the tank is part empty the organic growth would decay and give off gases, discolour the water, and produce corrosive acids. The absorption of the gases and acids could also give the water an unpleasant flavour.

The overflow pipes fitted to tanks for the disposal of excess inflow of rainwater must be adequate to prevent uncontrolled overflow. Such pipes must not terminate very close to storm water drains and soak pits as otherwise unpleasant gases might enter the tank. The pipe end and all openings to the tank must be fitted with strong, durable mesh to prevent birds, mosquitoes and other insects gaining entry into the tank.

No copper pipe should be used with any metal water tank. The inlet pipe must discharge the water through a durable strainer fitted well above the high water level. The inlet must not be close to the tank wall. Where tanks are interconnected each tank must receive at least some of the water directly from the roof. No tank must get its supply entirely from other tanks. It is convenient to have individual domestic tanks of no greater capacity than 4 or 5 kilolitres (1000 gallons). . · \_ -

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

**DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 AND 10)** 

# SECTION DG

# **ANCILLARY PROVISIONS**

# Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

DG1 Minor Structures and Components

DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

# CONTENTS

# PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

# DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Part

Part

DG1 Minor Structures and Components

DG1.1 Access to domestic-type water heaters

DG1.2 Fences

DG1.3 Poultry and other domestic animal houses

DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

DG2.1 General requirements

DG2.2 Open fireplaces deemed-to-satisfy

# ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

. .

.

· · ·

# PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

# **OBJECTIVES AND REQURIED PERFORMANCE**

This Section contains more specific requirements for particuar parts of class 1 buildings.

Parts of buildings and structures must be so designed and constructed that the following requirements **in addition** to those listed for Sections B, DC, and DF where relevant, are fulfilled:

# DGP1 Minor Structures and Components

#### DGP1.1 Domestic-type water heaters

Household water heaters must be adequately supported, drained, and accessible.

# DGP1.2 Aesthetics

Any minor structure such as fencing, awnings and the like must be suited to the general surroundings as well as the occupancy of the building and the neighbourhood.

# DGP1.3 Animal houses

Accommodation for animals and poultry must not lead to insanitary conditions for the occupier or neighbours and the public.

# DGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues must be adequately constructed or separated to prevent-

- (a) ignition of nearby parts of the building; or
- (b) escape or discharge of smoke to the inside of the building or to adjacent *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like.

0 0

ι.

(

,

# **DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

# MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

# DG1.1 Access to domestic-type water heaters

- (a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
  - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or earthquake loads;
  - (ii) be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
  - (iii) provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- (b) AS 1529 is the relevant standard for the installation of a household water heater.

# DG1.2 Fences

Any fencing or free standing wall must be suited to the occupancy of the building within. It must not detract from the general aesthetic appearance of the surroundings. If any barbed wire or other such is used it must be at a height of not less than 2 m above the finished level of any existing or intended adjacent footpath.

# DG1.3 Poultry and other Domestic Animal Houses

A building used for keeping domestic birds or animals must be not less than:

- (a) 60 m from any other building or source of potable water; and
- (b) 10 m from any boundary adjoining a public road or other public space.

The floor of the building must be constructed of suitable material. Suitable arrangements must be made for the collection and disposal of animal wastes, so that they do not create a nuisance or encourage the breeding of flies and other pests. PART DG 2

# FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

# DG2.1 General requirements

A chimney or flue must be constructed-

- (a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance to which it is connected;
- (b) so that the temperature of the exposed faces will not exceed a level that would cause damage to nearby parts of the building;
- (c) so that hot products of combustion will not-
  - (i) escape through the walls of the chimney or flue; or
  - discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby *combustible* materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like;
- (d) in such a manner as to prevent rainwater penetrating to any part of the interior of the building;
- (e) such that its termination is not less than;
  - (i) 600 mm above any point of penetration of or contact with the roof; and
  - (ii) 900 mm above any opening or openable part in any building, within 3 m horizontal distance of the chimney or flue; and
- (f) so that it is accessible for cleaning.

#### DG2.2 Open fireplaces deemed-to-satisfy

An open fireplace, or solid-fuel burning appliance in which the fuel-burning compartment is not enclosed, satisfies DG2.1 if it has-

(a) a hearth constructed of stone, concrete, masonry or similar *non-combustible* material so that-

(d)

- (i) it extends not less than 300 mm beyond the front of the fireplace opening and not less than 150 mm beyond each side of that opening;
- (ii) it extends beyond the limits of the fireplace or appliance not less that 300 mm if the fireplace or appliance is free-standing from any wall of the room;
- (iii) its upper surface does not slope away from the grate or appliance; and
- (iv) combustible material situated below the hearth (but not below that part required to extend beyond the fireplace opening or the limits of the fireplace) is not less than 155 mm from the upper surface of the hearth;
- (b) walls forming the sides and back of the fireplace up to not less than 300 mm above the underside of the arch or lintel which-
  - (i) are constructed in 2 separate leaves of solid masonry not less than 180 mm thick, excluding any cavity; and
  - do not consist of concrete block masonry in the construction of the inner leaf;
- (c) walls of the chimney above the level referred to in
   (b)-
  - (i) constructed of masonry units with a net volume, excluding cored and similar holes, not less than 75% of their gross volume, measured on the overall rectangular shape of the units, and with an actual thickness of not less than 90 mm; and
  - (ii) lined internally to a thickness of not less than 12 mm with rendering consisting of 1 part cement, 3 parts lime, and 10 parts sand by volume, or other suitable material; and
  - suitable damp-proof courses or flashing to maintain weatherproofing.

13

64

. 1

0

ų

4

11

 $\partial$ 

đ

Ы

11

 $\langle I$ 

 $\{\cdot\}$ 

. 1

1

 $\gamma$ 

 $(\cdot)$ 

1.5

39

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

# PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO 9)

# SECTION NC

# **FIRE RESISTANCE**

Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NC1 Fire Resistance and Stability
- NC2 Compartmentation and Separation
- NC3 Protection of Openings

, Line

.

# PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

# OBJECTIVES

í

Ę

ł

ś

1

N

Ę

Ç

ŧ,

۱

The design and construction of building must fulfill the following objectives -

### NCP1 Fire Resistance and Stability

- (a) A building must be constructed so that it is protected from fire in any other building.
- (b) Materials used in the construction must be such that if there is a fire in the building -
  - the spread of fire and the generation of smoke and toxic gases will be minimised;
  - stability will be maintained for a period at least sufficient for the occupants to escape and to ensure the safety of fire-fighters; and
  - (iii) there will be little risk of collapse onto adjoining property.

#### NCP2 Compartmentation and Separation

Buildings must be constructed to localise the effects of fire to the areas of origin. Adequate levels of passive fire protection must be provided so that sufficient time is available for the users and others to escape from the effects of fire and as an alternative, to allow the users to stay safely within unaffected compartments for the duration reasonably required to put out the fire by active means.

#### NCP3 Protection of Openings

Openings must be protected and service penetrations must be fire-stopped to maintain separation and compartmentation.

# REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NCP 1.1 In order to maintain the *structural adequacy* and stability of any building for a sufficient time for the safety of

the users, those who fight fires and others, the following must be ensured -

- (a) the load bearing elements must have the FRL appropriate to their function in the building, the expected fire load density, the fire risk, the height of the building, its location with reference to the availability of external fire fighting resources, and the fire control measures available within the building;
- (b) the FRL of structural elements must be at least equal to that of other elements to which they provide support; and
- (c) the collapse of elements with a lower FRL must not result in the collapse of elements with a higher FRL.

**NCP2.1** The size of fire compartment must also be consistent with the fire severity of the fire load density it contains and the likely spread of fire between it and any other compartment, *storey* or building.

Building compartment size and separating construction must be such that the potential size of a fire and the spread of fire and smoke are limited in order to -

- (a) protect the occupants of one part of a building from the effects of fire elsewhere in the building.
- (b) control the spread of fire or smoke to adjoining buildings; and
- (c) facilitate access to the building by fire-fighters.

NCP 3.1 Openings of any nature in the envelope surrounding *fire compartments* must be so protected that they do not allow the passage of dangerous amounts of heat, flames, smoke and gases in the event of a fire within or outside the compartment and for a period sufficient to -

- (a) allow the safe evacuation of all affected people; and
- (b) allow fire fighters to fight the fire.

The sufficiency of the duration allowed must take into account the nature of occupancy of the buildig as well as the proximity of other buildings and their occupancy.

.

.

# DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

# FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

# NC1.1 Type of construction required

Ĩ,

y

ï

£

è

٢,

K.

シンクシャリア

(a) The minimum level of *fire-resisting construction* of a building must be that given in Specification NC1.1

# NC1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

In a building of Class 2 or 3, a storey that has an average height of more than 6 m is counted as -

- (i) one *storey* if it is the only *storey* above the ground; or
- (ii) 2 storeys in any other case.

# NC1.3 Lightweight construction

Lightweight construction must be of such material and such construction that it is not easily damaged by the ordinary use of the building.

# NC1.4 Early Fire Hazard Indices

The Early Fire Hazard Indices of materials and assemblies inside Class 2 and 3 buildings must comply with Specification NC1.4.

National Building Code - 1990

# COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

# NC2.1 Application

This Part applies to all Class 2 and 3 buildings.

# NC2.2 General floor area limitations

- (a) Subject to NC2.3 the size of any *fire compartment* in a building must not exceed the relevant maximum *floor area* and volume set out in Table NC2.2.
- (b) A part of a building which contains only water tanks or similar service units is not counted in the *floor area* or volume of a *fire compartment* if it is situated at the top of the building.

TABLE NC 2.2 MAXIMUM SIZE OF FIRE COMPARTMENTS							
	Max floor area	Max volume					
Class 2	500 m²	2000 m³					
Class 3	1000 m²	4000 m³					

# NC2.3 Health-care buildings

A *health-care building* must be divided into *fire compartments* with a *floor area* of not more than 500 m<sup>2</sup>; and further subdivided with walls of minimum FRL of 30/30/30 into *floor areas* of not more than 250 m<sup>2</sup>. *Fire compartments* must be separated from the remainder of the building by *fire walls* with a FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

# NC2.4 Separation by fire walls

A part of a building separated from the remainder of the building by a *fire wall* is treated as a separate building if -

- (a) the fire wall -
  - extends through all storeys and spaces in the nature of storeys that are common to that part and any adjoining part of the building;
  - (ii) is carried through to the underside of the roof covering; and
  - (iii) has the relevant FRL prescribed by Specification NC1.1 for each of the adjoining parts, and if these are different, the greater FRL;
- (b) any openings in a *fire wall* comply with Part NC3;

- (c) timber purlins or other *combustible* material do pass through or cross the *fire wall*; and
- (d) where the roof of one of the adjoining parts is low than the roof of the other part the design of t building must restrict the spread of fire from t lower part to the higher part.

# NC2.5 Separation of classifications in the same stor

If a building has parts of different classifications locat alongside one another in the same *storey* -

- (a) each building element in that *storey* must have t higher FRL prescribed in Specification NC1.1 ( that element for the classifications concerned; (
- (b) the parts must be separated in that storey by a *f* wall with whichever is the greater of the higher FI prescribed in Specification NC1.1 for ti classifications concerned.

# NC2.6 Separation of classifications in different store

If one of the adjoining parts is of Class 2 and if parts different classification are situated one above the other adjoining *storeys* they must be separated as follows: -

- the underside of the floor (including the sides ar underside of any floor beams) must have a *fir* protective covering.

# NC2.7 Electricity substations

If an electricity substation is situated within a building -

- (a) it must be separated from any other part of the building by construction having a FRL of not less than 60/60/60;
- (b) doors, windows and any other openings on a external wall need not have a FRL if such opening are no closer to a fire souce feature or exit than 3 n Any other doorway including those opening to an other part of the building must be protected with sei closing - /60/30 fire doors;
- (c) electricity supply cables between a main and th substation, and between the substation and th main switchboard, must be enclosed or otherwis protected by construction having a FRL of not les than 60/60/60; and
- (d) any openings, fans or grilles for natural or mechanica ventilation must be located only on an *external wa* unless protected with an *automatic* -/60/30 fir shutter.

# **PROTECTION OF OPENINGS**

# NC3.1 Application of Part

ĉ

¢'

£.

€1.

ð.,

4

ŧ.

10 N

Q

 $\mathbf{k}^{g}$ 

¥.

£.

ąÌ,

 $\delta$ 

ŧ;

¢

e/

£

ę.,

¢,

Ĉ,

۱ ۲ TABLE NC3.3

COMPARTMENTS

- (a) This Part does not apply to -
  - control joints, weep holes, and the like, in masonry construction, and joints between pre-cast concrete panels, if they are not larger than necessary for the purpose; or
  - (ii) non-combustible ventilators for sub-floor or cavity ventilation, if each does not exceed 45x10<sup>3</sup> mm<sup>2</sup> in face area and is spaced not less than 2 m from any other ventilator in the same wall.
- (b) This Part applies to openings in building elements required to be fire-resisting, including doorways, windows (including any associated fanlight or infill panel) and other fixed or openable glazed areas that does not have have the required FRL.

# NC3.2 Openings in external walls

- (a) Openings in an *external wall* must be not less distant than 1.5 m from any *fire source feature*.
- (b) Where openings *require* protection such as fire doors, fire *windows* etc, these must comply with Specification NC3.2.

#### NC3.3 Separation of openings in different fire compartments

The distance between openings in *external walls* in compartments separated by a *fire wall* must not be less than that set out in Table NC3.3.

DISTANCE BETWEEN OPENINGS IN DIFFERENT

. 4	NGLE BET	WEEN	MIN. DISTANCE BETWEEN OPENINGS							
	from	0°	to	45°	 					5 m
	more than	45°	to	90°	 					4 m
	more than	90°	to	135°	 					3 m
	more than	135°	to	180°	 					2 m

# NC3.4 Doorways in fire walls

The aggregate width of openings for doorways in a *fire wall* which are not part of a *horizontal exit* must not exceed 1/2 of the length of the *fire wall*, and each doorway must be protected by a single fire door or a non-metallic fire shutter, which -

- (i) has a FRL of not less than that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire walt*, and
- (ii) is self-closing or automatic if the automatic closing device is designed to operate if there is smoke in the part of the building on either side of the fire wall.

#### NC3.5 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits

A doorway that is part of a *horizontal exit* must be protected by a single fire door which has a FRL of not less than that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire wall*.

#### NC3.6 Openings in exits

- (a) A doorway that does not open to a road or open space must be protected by a self-closing or automatic -/60/30 fire door if it opens to a stairway, passageway or ramp.
- (b) A window must not be located in an external wall of a stairway, passageway or ramp if it is within 6 m of, and exposed to -
  - (i) a fire-source feature; or
  - (ii) another *window* or other opening in a wall of the same building, unless they both serve the same fire-isolated enclosure.

#### NC3.7 Services in exits

Exits must not be have any services other than-

- (a) electrical wiring associated with a lighting system serving the *exit*; or
- (b) water supply pipes for fire services and domestic use.

#### NC3.8 Bounding construction: Class 2 and 3 buildings

- (a) A doorway in a Class 2 or 3 building must be protected if it provides access from a soleoccupancy unit to-
  - (i) a *public corridor*, public hallway, or the like;

# NC3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

- (ii) a room not within a sole-occupancy unit;
- (iii) the landing of an internal stairway that serves as a *required exit*; or
- (iv) another sole-occupancy unit.
- (b) Protection for a doorway must be at least a *self-closing*, tight fitting, solid core door, not less than 35 mm thick.
- (c) Other openings in *internal walls* which are *required* to have a FRL to inhibit the lateral spread of fire must not reduce the *fire-resisting* performance of the wall.

### NC3.9 Openings for service installations

An electrical, electronic, plumbing, mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning, or other service that penetrates a building element (other than an *external wall* or roof) that is *required* to have a FRL or a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*, must be installed so that the *fire-resisting* performance of the building element is not impaired.

## NC3.10 Installation deemed-to-satisfy

Installation satisfies NC3.9 if -

(a) the method and materials used are identical with a prototype assembly of the service and building element which has achieved the *required* FRL or *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*;

- (b) it complies with (a) except for the *insulation* criterion relating to the service when -
  - (i) the service is farther than 100 mm from any *combustible* material; and
  - (ii) it is not located in a required exit;
- (c) the service is a metal pipe installed in accordance with Specification NC3.10 and it penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling *required* to have a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*;
- (d) the service is sanitary plumbing installed in accordance with Specification NC3.10 and it -
  - (i) is of metal or UPVC pipe; and
  - (ii) is in sanitary compartments which are separated from other parts of the building by walls with the FRL *required* by Specification NC1.1 for a stair *shaft* in the building and a *self-closing* - /60/30 fire door;
- the service is a wire or cable, or a cluster of wires or cables installed in accordance with Specification NC3.10 and it penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire;
- (f) the service is an electrical switch, outlet, or the like, and it is installed in accordance with Specification NC3.10.

# FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

1. Scope

This Specification contains requirements for the *fire-resisting* construction of building elements.

# 2. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

# 2.1 Exposure to fire-source features

- (a) Apart of a building element is exposed to a *fire-source feature* if there is no obstruction to any horizontal line between that part and the *fire-source feature* or a vertical projection of the feature. Where another part of the building obstructs any such horizontal line, the part under consideration will still be considered exposed if the obstruction has -
  - (i) a FRL of not less than 30/-/-; or
  - (ii) is transparent or translucent.
- (b) If various distances apply for different parts of a building element-
  - the entire element must have the FRL applicable to that part having the least distance between itself and the relevant *fire*source feature; or
  - each part of the element must have the FRL applicable according to its individual distance from the relevant *fire-source feature*,

but this provision does not override or permit any exemption from Clause 2.2.

# 2.2 Fire protection for a support of another part

A part of a building that gives direct vertical or lateral support to another part *required* to have a FRL, must have a FRL in respect of *structural adequacy* not less than the greater of -

- (a) that *required* for the part it supports; or
- (b) that required for the part itself,

and be *non-combustible* if the part it supports is *required* to be *non-combustible*.

# 2.3 Lintels

A lintel must have the FRL required for the part of building in which it is situated. It need not have the FRL if it does not contribute to the support of a fire door, fire window or fire shutter, and -

- (a) it spans an opening in
  - a wall of a building containing only one storey;
  - (ii) a non-*loadbearing* wall of a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) it spans an opening in masonry which is not more than 150 mm thick and -
  - (i) not more than 3 m wide if the masonry is nonloadbearing;; or
  - (ii) not more than 1.8 m wide if the masonry is loadbearing and part of one of the leaves of a cavity wall.

# 2.4 Attachments not to Impair fire-resistance

- (a) A combustible material may be used as a finish or lining to a wall or roof, or in a sign, sunscreen or blind, awning, or other attachment to a building element which has the required FRL if-
  - the material is exempt under clause 5 of Specification NC1.4 or complies with the Early Fire Hazard Indices prescribed in clause 2 of the same Specification.
  - (ii) it is not located near or directly above a required exit so as to make the exit unusable in a fire; and
  - (iii) it does not otherwise constitute an undue risk of fire spread via the facade of the building.
- (b) The attachment of a facing or finish, or the installation of ducting or any other service, to a part of a building *required* to have a FRL must not impair the *required* FRL of that part.

# 2.5 General concessions

- (a) Steel columns Except in a *fire wall* or *common wall*, a steel column need not have a FRL in a building that contains only one *storey*.
- (b) Timber Columns In a building that contains only one storey, a timber column may be used in a building provided:
  - (i) in a fire wall or common wall the column has the required FRL.
  - (ii) in all other cases, the column has a FRL of not less than 30/-/-.

# NC1.1 FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

- (c) Structures on roofs A non-combustible structure situated on a roof need not comply with the other provisions of this Specification if it only contains one or more of the following:
  - (i) Hot water or other water tanks.
  - (ii) Other service units that are *non-combustible* and do not contain *combustible* fluids.

# 3. TYPE OF FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

# 3.1 Fire-resistance of building elements

In a building required to be of fire-resisting construction -

- (a) a building element listed in Table 3, and any beam or column incorporated in it, must have a FRL not less than that listed in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned;
- (b) an *external wall* that is *required* by Table 3 to have a FRL may be considered to have a FRL if the outer part of the wall has the *required* FRL;
- (c) a fire wall or an internal wall bounding a sole occupancy unit or separating adjoining units, if it is of lightweight construction, must comply with Specification NC1.3.

- (d) in a Class 2 or 3 building an *internal wall* which i required by Table 3 to have a FRL must extend
  - (i) to the underside of the floor next above if the floor has a FRL of at least 30/30/30 or a firm protective covering on the underside of the floor;
  - to the underside of a ceiling having i resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or
  - (iii) to the underside of the roof covering if it is non-combustible, or 450 mm above the adjoining roof covering if it is combustible, and must not be crossed by timber purlins o other combustible material,

unless the wall bounds a *sole-occupancy unit* in the topmost (or only) *storey* and there is only one unit in tha *storey*, and

(e) All external walls and fire walls within 1.5 m of the boundary, excluding a boundary adjoining a public road or stream or other open water channel, musbe extended to not less than 450 mm above the adjoining roof line to form a parapet.

# FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

TABLE 3 FIRE-RESISTANCE LEVEL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS									
	FRL: (in minutes) Structural Adequacy / Integrity / Insulation								
BUILDING ELEMENT	OF BUILDING 3								
<b>EXTERNAL WALL</b> or other external building element excluding a roof, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is -									
less than 1.5 m	60/60/60	60/60/60							
EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an external wall, where the distance from any fire- source feature to which it is exposed is -									
less than 1.5 m	60/-/ -	60/ -/-							
COMMON WALLS AND FIRE WALLS									
	60/60/60	60/60/60							
INTERNAL WALLS -									
Bounding <i>public corridors</i> , public hallways and the like	30/30/30	30/30/30							
Between or bounding <i>sole-occupancy</i> units	30/30/30	-/-/-							
Bounding a stair	30/30/30 30/30/30								
FLOORS	30/30/30	30/30/30							

# **EARLY FIRE HAZARD INDICES**

#### 1. Scope

This Specification sets out requirements in relation to the Early Fire Hazard Indices of materials, linings and surface finishes inside buildings.

### 2. Class 2 and 3 buildings: General requirements

Except where superseded by clause 3 or 4, any material or component used in a building must -

- (a) in the case of a sarking-type material, have a Flammability Index not more than 5;
- (b) in the case of other materials, have -
  - (i) a *Spread-of-Flame Index* not more than 9; and
  - (ii) a *Smoke-Developed Index* not more than 8 if the *Spread-of-Flame Index* is more than 5;
- (c) be completely covered on all faces by concrete or masonry not less than 50 mm thick; or
- (d) in the case of a composite member or assembly, be constructed so that when assembled as proposed in a building-
  - (i) any material which does not comply with (a) or (b) is protected on all sides and edges from exposure to the air;
  - the member or assembly, when tested in accordance with Specification A2.4, has a Smoke-Developed Index and a Spread-of-Flame Index not exceeding those prescribed in (b); and
  - (iii) the member or assembly retains the protection in position so that it prevents ignition of the material and continues to screen it from access to free air for a period of not less than 10 minutes.

# 3. Acceptable materials

A material complies with clause 2 if it is -

- (a) plaster, cement render, concrete. terrazzo, ceramic tile or the like; or
- (b) a fire-protective covering.

# 4. Fire-retardant coatings

When paint or fire-retardant coatings are used in order to make a substrate comply with a *required Spread-of-Flame Index, Smoke-Developed Index* or *Flammability Index*, this fact must be clearly marked on an easily visible label or labels and permanently fixed to the building element that the coating will not be scraped off or otherwise main ineffective, without re-coating to preserve the fire-retard properties. If any coating used will retain the *required* f retardant properties for only a limited period, it must replaced before the expiry of such period so that *required* properties are not diminished.

# 5. Exempted building parts and materials

The requirements in this Specification for a *Spread-of-Fla Index, Smoke-Developed Index* or *Flammability Index* not apply to -

- (a) timber-framed windows;
- (b) solid timber handrails or skirtings;
- (c) timber-faced solid-core or fire doors;
- (d) electrical switches, outlets, cover plates or the lik
- (e) materials used for -
  - roof covering or membranes, or ro insulating material, applied in continuo contact with a substrate;
  - (ii) adhesives; or
  - damp-proof courses, flashings, caulkin sealing, ground moisture barriers, or th like;
- (f) paint, varnish, lacquer or similar finish, other the nitro-cellulose lacquer;
- (g) a clear or translucent rooflight of glass fibre reinforce polyester if-
  - the roof in which it is installed forms part a building in fire-resisting construction;
  - the material is used as part of the rocovering;
  - (iii) it is not prohibited by any other clause of th Code;
  - (iv) it is not closer than 1.5 m from anoth€ rooflight of the same type;
  - (v) each rooflight is not more than 14 m<sup>2</sup> in area and
  - (vi) the area of the rooflights is not more tha 20% of the roof surface; or
- (h) any other material which does not significantl increase the hazards of fire.

.

# FIRE, SMOKE DOORS, FIRE WINDOWS AND SHUTTERS

#### 1. Scope

This Specification sets out requirements for the construction of fire doors, smoke doors, fire windows and fire shutters.

### 2. Fire doors

1

A required fire door must comply with NZS 4232, except that -

- it may be fully glazed or incorporate glazing if the tested prototype was similarly glazed;
- (b) the radiation level at a distance of 365 mm from the face of the glazing must not exceed 10 kW/m<sup>2</sup> during the period corresponding to that for *integrity* in the *required* FRL;
- (c) the rise in average temperature on the side of the tested prototype remote from the furnace must not exceed 140°C (except in any glazed part) during the first 30 minutes of the fire test.

#### 3. Smoke doors

A required smoke door -

- (a) may have one or 2 door leaves;
- (b) must swing -
  - (i) in the direction of egress; or
  - (ii) in both directions if the path of travel to *exits* is in either direction;
- (c) must be *self-closing* and may be fitted with an *automatic* release device; and

- (d) must be constructed of -
  - solid-core at least 35 mm thick, glazed panels in a timber frame at least 35 mm thick, or a metal frame, with a mid-rail or suitable crash bar; or
  - (ii) PVC, or other suitable material;

and if necessary, be fitted with smoke seals.

# 4. Fire shutters

A required fire shutter must be a shutter that -

- (a) is identical with a tested prototype that has achieved the *required* FRL;
- (b) is installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype; and
- (c) did not have a rise in average temperature on the side remote from the furnace of more than 140°C during the first 30 minutes of the test.

# 5. Fire windows

A required fire window must be -

- (a) identical in construction with a prototype that has achieved the *required* FRL; and
- (b) installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype.

# PENETRATION OF WALLS, FLOORS AND CEILINGS BY SERVICES

# 1. Scope

This Specification prescribes materials and methods of installation for services that penetrate walls, floors and ceilings *required* to have a FRL.

# 2. Application

- (a) This Specification applies to installations permitted under this Code as alternatives to systems that have been demonstrated by test to fulfil the requirements of NC3.10.
- (b) This Specification does not apply to installations in ceilings required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire nor to the installation of piping that contains or is intended to contain a flammable liquid or gas.

# 3. Metal pipes

- (a) A metal pipe that is not normally filled with liquid must not penetrate a wall, floor or ceiling within 100 mm of any *combustible* material unless wrapped or fire stopped to satisfy the requirements of Clause 7, and must be constructed of -
  - (i) copper alloy or stainless steel with a wall thickness of at least 1 mm; or
  - (ii) cast iron or steel (other than stainless steel) with a wall thickness of at least 2 mm.
- (b) An opening for a metal pipe must -
  - (i) be neatly formed, cut or drilled;
  - (ii) be no closer than 200 mm to any other service penetration; and
  - (iii) accommodate only one pipe.
- (c) A metal pipe must be wrapped but must not be lagged or enclosed in thermal insulation over the length of its penetration of a wall, floor or ceiling unless the lagging or thermal insulation fulfils the requirements of clause 7.
- (d) The gap between a metal pipe and the wall, floor or ceiling it penetrates must be fire-stopped in accordance with clause 7.

# 4. Pipes penetrating sanitary compartments

.

If a pipe of metal or UPVC penetrates the floor of a *sanitary compartment* in accordance with NC3.10(e) of this Code -

 the opening must be neatly formed and no larger than is necessary to accommodate the pipe or fitting; and

•

(b) the gap between pipe and floor must be fire-stoppe in accordance with clause 7.

# 5. Wires and cables

If a wire or cable or cluster of wires or cables penetrates floor, wall or ceiling -

- the opening must be neatly formed, cut or drille and no closer than 50 mm to any other servic opening; and
- (b) the opening must be no larger in cross-sectional area than -
  - (i) 2000 mm<sup>2</sup> if only a single cable i accommodated and the gap between cable and wall, floor or ceiling is no wider than 1: mm; or
  - (ii) 500 mm<sup>2</sup> in any other case; and
- (c) the gap between the service and the wall, floor o ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with clause 7.

# 6. Electrical switches and outlets

If an electrical switch, outlet, socket or the like is accommodated in an opening or recess in a wall, floor o ceiling -

- (a) the opening or recess must not -
  - be located opposite any point within 300 mm horizontally nor 600 mm vertically of any opening or recess on the opposite side of the wall; nor
  - (ii) extend beyond half the thickness of the wall; and
- (b) the gap between the service and the wall, floor or ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with clause 7.

# 7. Fire-stopping

- (a) Material: The material used for fire-stopping of service penetrations must be concrete, hightemperature mineral fibre, high-temperature ceramic fibre or other material that does not flow at a temperature below 1120°C when tested in accordance with AS 1038.15, and must have -
  - demonstrated in a system tested in accordance with NC3.10(a) of this Code that it does not impair the fire-resisting performance of the building element in which it is installed; or

-

# PENETRATION OF WALLS, FLOORS AND CEILINGS BY SERVICES

- (ii) demonstrated in a test in accordance with
   (e) that it does not impair the fire-resisting performance of the test slab.
- (b) **Installation**: Fire-stopping material must be packed into the gap between the service and wall, floor or ceiling in a manner, and compressed to the same degree, as adopted for testing under 7(a)(i) or (ii).
- (c) Hollow construction: If a pipe penetrated a hollow wall (such as a stud wall, a cavity wall or a wall of hollow blockwork) or a hollow floor/ceiling system, the cavity must be so framed and packed with firestopping material that the material is -
  - (i) installed in accordance with 7(b) to a thickness of 25 mm all round the service for the full length of the penetration; and
  - (ii) restrained, independently of the service, from moving or parting from the surfaces of the service and of the wall, floor or ceiling.
- (d) Recesses: If an electrical switch, socket, outlet or the like is accommodated in a recess in a hollow wall or hollow floor/ceiling system -
  - (i) the cavity immediately behind the service must be framed and packed with fire-stopping material in accordance with 7(c); or
  - (ii) the back and sides of the service must be

protected with refractory lining board identical with and to the same thickness as that in which the service is installed.

- (e) **Test**: The test to demonstrate compliance of a firestopping material with this Specification must be conducted as follows:
  - (i) The test specimen must comprise a concrete slab not less than 1 m square and not more than 100 mm thick, and appropriately reinforced if necessary for structural adequacy during manufacture, transport and testing.
  - (ii) The slab must have a hole 50 mm in diameter through the centre and the hole must be packed with the fire-stopping material.
  - (iii) The slab must be conditioned in accordance with AS 1530.4.
  - (iv) Two thermocouples complying with AS 1530.4 must be attached to the upper surface of the packing each about 5 mm from its centre.
  - (v) The slab must be tested on flat generally in accordance with Section 10 of AS 1530.4 and must achieve a fire-resistance of 60/60/60 or better.

# NC3.10 PENETRATION OF WALLS, FLOORS AND CEILINGS BY SERVICES

# NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

# **PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO 9)**

# SECTION ND

# ACCESS AND EGRESS

# Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- ND1 Provision for Escape
- ND2 Construction of Exits
- ND3 Access for People with Disabilities

# ACCESS AND EGRESS

-1

4

# CONTENTS

# PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

#### Part Part ND1 **Provision for Escape** ND2.3 Installations in exits and paths of travel ND2.4 Width of stairways ND1.1 Application ND2.5 Ramps ND1.2 Number of exits required ND2.6 Treads and risers ND1.3 Exit travel distances ND2.7 Landings ND1.4 Distance between alternative exits ND2.8 Thresholds ND1.5 Dimensions of exits ND2.9 Balustrades ND1.6 External stairways ND2.10 Handrails ND1.7 Travel by stairways or ramps ND2.11 Fixed platforms, walkways and ladders ND1.8 Discharge from exits ND2.12 Doorways and doors ND1.9 Horizontal exits ND2.13 Swinging doors ND1.10 Number of persons accommodated ND1.11 Measurement of distances ND3 Access for People with Disabilities ND1.12 Method of measurement ND3.1 Application of Part ND2 **Construction of Exits** ND3.2 Access to buildings ND2.1 Application of Part ND3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible ND2.2 Stairways and ramps

ND3.4 Concessions

e Markana e e e e

# PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

# OBJECTIVES

9

5

\$

١

• }

١

1

l.

g

٩

;

1

A building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

#### NDP1 Provision for Escape

There must be adequate means of escape in case of fire or other emergency from all parts of the building to a place of safety.

# NDP2 Construction of Exits

- (a) Stairways, ramps and passageways must be such as to provide safe passage for the users of the building.
- (b) Stairways, ramps, floors and balconies, and any roof to which people normally have access, must have bounding walls, balustrades or other barriers where necessary to protect users from the risk of falling.
- (c) Vehicle ramps and any floor to which vehicles have access must have kerbs or other barriers where necessary to provide protection to pedestrians and to the structure of the building.

# NDP3 Access for People with Disabilities

Reasonable provision must be made in the design of a building, having regard to its use and location, to facilitate access and circulation by people with disabilities.

# REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NDP1.1 The design and construction of buildings must allow all occupants in any or all *fire compartments* to get to-

- (a) any one of more than one *exit* within 2.5 minutes; or
- (b) a single exit within 1 minute.

**NDP2.1** The design and construction of *exits* must allow for the following optimum conditions during evacuation in any emergency -

- (a) a density in the *exit* of 2.0 persons/m<sup>2</sup> of *exit floor* area;
- (b) a speed of movement along the slope of the *exit* of 0.5 m/s; and
- (c) an average flow of 1.18 persons per second per metre effective width of *exit*.

In the case of occupancies such as *health-care buildings* where evacuation needs the assistance of others and/or of equipment, additional consideration must be given to the design of *exits*.

The *pitch* of any stairway or slope of a ramp must not be unsafe or uncomfortable.

The size of openings in any bounding wall, balustrade or the like must be such as to prevent very young mobile children from going through them and injuring themselves. These must also be designed to discourage young children under 5 years of age from gaining any foothold and climbing over them.

**NDP3.1** People with disabilities must have the facility to gain reasonable access to buildings so that they are not at any material disadvantage when compared with others.

.

.

# DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

# **PROVISION FOR ESCAPE**

# ND1.1 Application

ŀ

,

4

١

١

E

13

 $\mathbb{R}^{2}_{i}$ 

1

£

۲

4

Ĵ

This Part applies to all buildings except the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building.

# ND1.2 Number of exits required

- (a) All buildings Every building must have at least one required exit.
- (b) Health-care buildings In addition to any *horizontal exit*, and subject to (c) not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from any *storeys* which includes a *ward area.*
- (c) Exits from divided wards: In a health-care building, at least one exit must be provided from every portion of a storey which has been divided in accordance with NC2.3.

# ND1.3 Exit travel distances

- (a) Class 2 buildings:
  - The entrance doorway of any soleoccupancy unit must be not more than 6 m from an exit or from a point at which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available; and
  - (ii) no point on the floor of a room which is not in a sole-occupancy unit must be more than 20 m from an exit or from a point at which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available, in which case the maximum distance to one of those exits must not exceed 40 m from the starting point.

# (b) Class 3 buildings:

Subject to (c):

- (i) No point on a floor must be more than 20 m from an *exit*, or a point from which travel in different directions to 2 *exits* is available, in which case the maximum distance to one of those *exits* must not exceed 40 m from the starting point.
- (c) Health-care buildings: In a ward area in a healthcare building -
  - No point on the floor must be more than 12 m from a point from which travel in different directions to 2 of the *required exits* is available; and

(ii) the maximum distance to one of those *exits* must not be more than 30 m from the starting point.

# ND1.4 Distance between alternative exits

*Exits* that are *required* as alternative means of egress must be -

- (a) distributed as uniformly as practicable within or around the *storey* served:
- (b) not less than 9 m apart; and
- (c) not more than 45 m apart in a Class 2 building or a *storey* containing a *ward area* in a *health-care building*.

# ND1.5 Dimensions of exits

In a required exit or path of travel to an exit -

- (a) the unobstructed height throughout must be not less than 2 m;
- (b) if the storey pertains to a Class 2 buildings or accommodates not more than 100 persons, the unobstructed width except for doorways must be -
  - (i) not less than 1 m; or
  - (ii) 2 m in a passageway from a ward area;
- (c) if the *storey* accommodates more than 100 persons the aggregate width, except for doorways, must be not less than -
  - (i) 1 m plus 250 mm for each 50 persons (or part) in excess of 100; or
  - (ii) 2 m in a passageway from a ward area in class 9a buildings;
- (d) the clear openings of a doorway must be not less than-
  - (i) in ward areas 1.6 m wide or 1.25 m if it is a *horizontal exit*;
  - (ii) in areas used by students in a *school* -870 mm wide;
  - (iii) the width of *exit required* by (b) or (c), minus 250 mm; or
  - (iv) in any other case except where it opens to a sanitary compartment or bathroom - 760 mm wide; and

# ND1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

(e) the *required* width of *exit* must not diminish in the direction of travel to a road or *open space*.

# ND1.6 External stairways

An external stairway may serve as a *required exit* if the stairway (including any connecting bridges) is of *non-combustible* construction throughout. If any part of such a stairway connecting more than 2 *storeys* is exposed to, and less than 4 m from a *window*, doorway or the like in an *external wall*, the stairway must be fully shielded in the affected area from such *window* or doorway by *non-combustible* construction with a FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

# ND1.7 Travel by stairways or ramps

- (a) A stairway serving as a *required exit* must provide a continuous means of travel by its own flights of stairs and landings from every *storey* served to the level at which egress to a road or *open space* is provided.
- (b) In a Class 2 building, the distance between the doorway of a room or *sole-occupancy unit* and the point of egress to a road or *open space* by way of any *required* stairway or ramp must not exceed 30 m.
- (c) In a Class 3 building, the distance from any point on a floor and a point of egress to a road or *open space* by way of a *required* stairway or ramp must not exceed 80 m.
- (d) In a Class 2 or 3 building, a *required* stairway or ramp must discharge at a point not more than -
  - (i) 15 m from a doorway providing egress to a road or *open space* or from a passageway leading to a road or *open space*; or
  - (ii) 30 m from one of 2 such doorways or passageways if travel to each of them from the stairway or ramp is in opposite or approximately opposite directions.
- (e) If 2 or more exits are required and are provided by means of internal stairways or ramps, each exit must provide separate egress to a road or open space.

# ND1.8 Discharge from exits

- (a) An exit must not be blocked at the point of discharge and where necessary, suitable barriers must be provided to prevent vehicles from blocking the exit, or access to it.
- (b) If a required exit leads to an open space, the path

of travel to the road must have an unobstructed w throughout of not less than-

- (i) the minimum width of the *required exit*;
- (ii) 1 m;

whichever is the greater.

# ND1.9 Horizontal exits

Horizontal exits must -

- (a) not be counted as a *required exit*, when betwee sole-occupancy units; or
- (b) not comprise more than 50% of the numbe required exits from any part of a storey which i been divided by a *fire wall*; and
- (c) have a clear area on each side of the fire wall accommodate the total number of persc (calculated under ND1.10) from both parts of storey, of not less than -
  - (i) 2.5 m<sup>2</sup> per patient in a *health-care buildi* and
  - (ii) 0.5m<sup>2</sup> per person in any other case.

# ND1.10 Number of persons accommodated

The number of persons accommodated in a *storey*, or rommust be determined with consideration to the purpose which it is used and the layout of the *floor area* by -

- (a) calculating the sum of the numbers obtained dividing the *floor area* of each part of the *storey* the number of square metres per person listed Table ND1.10 according to the use of the pa excluding spaces set aside for -
  - (i) stairs, ramps, corridors, hallways, lobbie and the like;
  - (ii) service ducts and the like, *sanitary co. partments* or other ancillary uses;
- (b) reference to the seating capacity in an *assemt building* or room; or
- (c) any other suitable means of assessing its capaci

PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

· · ·

k.

). -1

1

بر ( ا

1 2

> ., 12,

> > ĵ′

# ND1

# TABLE ND1.10 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE

TYPE OF US	ε							m² per person
Art gallery, e	xhibition area, muse	nu 						4
Bar, cafe, ch	urch, dining room							1
								2
Boarding hou								15
_	om for main frame ar							25
Court room	- judicial area		compare	515				10
Count room								1
Dana dia m	<ul> <li>public seating</li> </ul>	••	••			••		0.5
Dance floor		••					••	
Dormitory		••	••	••	••	••	••	8
Early childho Factory -	od centre (a) machine shop, f			••		••		4
,	cutting, grading, or glass, except steelwork or ma products	finishir in the f nufactu 	ng or fitti abrication ire of ve	ing of n on of st hicles o	netals ructura or bulky 			5
	(b) areas used for f	abricatio	on and p	orocess	sing oth	ner thai	n	
	those in (a) (c) a space in which fixed plant or eq persons which v working hours	uipmen	it detern	nine the	a numb			50 Area per person determined by the use of the plant or equipment.
Garage	- public							30
Gymnasium								3
Hospital war								10
•	motel, guest house				••			15
	stadium - arena				••	••		10
Kiosk	Stadiam - arena			••	••		••	1
	dry (other than dome		 d. labor	 aton/				10
		sticy an		chory			••	2
Library	<ul> <li>reading space</li> </ul>	••						_
o <i>u</i> :	- storage space			••				30
	ing one for typewritin g or with desk-top co							10
Plant Room f		•		 				
riant noom r	service units							30
	- boilers or po		ant					50 .
Reading Roo								2
Restaurant								1
School -		 1		••				2
-	individual staff roon							10
<b>-</b>	general classroom							2
-	•							2
-	only as for others							1
-	multi-purpose hall		••					1
-	trade and practical	area :	primar	-	••			4
Chan	anno for sale of	odo	second	dary	••	••	••	As for Worksho
Shop -	space for sale of go		. Aug		ala			
	(a) at a level entere or any lower lev		i from th	ie open	air			3
	•							
	(b) all other levels							5

Showroom - display			 	 	5
Skating rink, based on rink area	·		 	 	1.5
Spectator stand, audience viewin	g area	:			
- bench seating			 	 	450 mm/person
- fixed seating			 	 	number of seats
- seating not fixe	əd		 		1
- standing viewing	ng area	l	 	 	0.3
Storage space			 	 	30
Swimming pool, based on pool a	rea		 	 	1.5
Switch room, transformer room			 	 	30
Telephone exchange - private			 	 	30
Theatre dressing room			 	 	4
Transport terminal			 	 	2
Workshop - for maintenance	e staff		 	 	30 (in the whole area)
- for manufacturi	ng proc	esses	 	 	As for factory

# ND1.11 Measurement of distances

The nearest part of an exit means in the case of -

- (a) A stairway, passageway, ramp, the nearest part of the doorway providing access to them.
- (b) A doorway opening to a road or *open space*, the nearest part of that doorway.
- (c) A horizontal exit, the nearest part of the doorway.

#### ND1.12 Method of measurement

The following rules apply:

- (a) In the case of a room that is not a sole-occupancy unit in a class 2 building, the distance includes the straight-line measurement from any point on the floor of the room to the nearest part of a doorway leading from it, together with the distance from that part of the doorway to the single required exit or point from which travel in different directions to 2 required exits is available.
- (b) Subject to (d) and (f), the distance from the doorway of a room or sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building is measured in a straight line to the nearest part of the required single exit or point from which travel in different direction to 2 required exits is available.

- (c) Subject to (d) and (f), the distance between e.
   is measured in a straight line between the near parts of those exits.
- (d) Only the shortest distance is taken along a corrid hallway, external balcony or other path of travel th curves or changes direction.
- (e) If more than one corridor, hallway, or other simila defined internal path of travel connects *requir* exits, the measurement is along the path of travel through the point at which travel in differe directions to those exits is available.
- (f) If a wall (including a demountable internal wall) th does not bound-
  - (i) a room; or
  - (ii) a corridor, hallway or the like,

causes a change of direction in proceeding to *required exit*, the distance is measured along the part of travel past that wall.

(g) If permanent fixed seating is provided, the distanc is measured along the path of travel between th rows of seats.

# CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

# ND2.1 Application of Part

Except for ND2.6 and ND2.9, this Part does not apply to the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building.

# ND2.2 Stairways and ramps

Required stairs and ramps (including landings and any supporting *structural members*) must be constructed only of -

- (a) reinforced or prestressed concrete;
- (b) steel in no part less than 6 mm thick; or
- (c) timber that -

くさ しゃご 含む みめ

- (i) has a finished thickness of not less than 40 mm;
- (ii) has an average density of not less than 800 kg/m<sup>3</sup> at a moisture content of 12%; and
- (iii) has not been joined by means of glue unless it has been laminated and glued with resorcinol formaldehyde or resorcinol phenol formaldehyde glue.

# ND2.3 Installations in exits and paths of travel

- (a) Gas or other fuel services must not be installed in a *required exit*.
- (b) Services or equipment must not be installed in a *required exit* or in any corridor, hallway, lobby or the like leading to a *required exit* if it comprises -
  - electricity meters, distribution boards or ducts;
  - central telecommunications distribution boards or equipment; or
  - electrical motors or other motors serving equipment in the building;

unless it is enclosed by *non-combustible* construction or a *fire-protective covering*.

- ND2.4 Width of stairways
- (a) The required width of a stairway must -
  - (i) be measured clear of all obstructions such as handrails, projecting parts of balustrades, columns, beams, and the like; and
- 金融运行应振扬 翻译的 医

- extend without interruption, except for ceiling cornices, to a height not less than 2 m vertically above a line along the nosings of the treads or the floor of the landing.
- (b) A required stairway that exceeds 2 m in width is counted as having a width of only 2 m unless it is divided by a balustrade or handrail continuous between landings and each division is less than 2 m wide.

# ND2.5 Ramps

# ND2.5.1 Pedestrian ramps

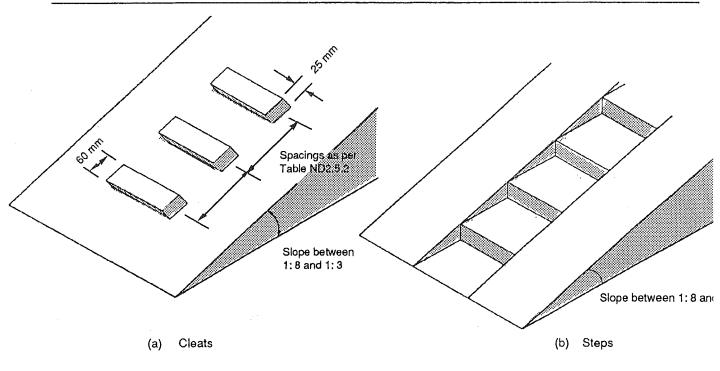
- (a) A ramp may be substituted for a stairway if the construction enclosing the ramp and the width and ceiling height comply with the requirements for a stairway.
- (b) A ramp serving as a *required exit* must have a gradient of not more than -
  - (i) 1:12 in are as used by patients in a *health-care building*; or
  - (ii) 1:14 if required by Part ND3;
  - (iii) 1:10 if subject to wetting; or
  - (iv) 1:8 in any other case.
- (c) The floor surface of a ramp must have a non-slip finish.

# ND2.5.2 Service ramps

Service ramps must not be steeper than 1:3. Where they are steeper than 1:8 cleats must be provided at the spacing shown in Table ND2.5.2. Two examples are shown in figure ND2.5.2.

TABLE ND2.5.2 SPACING OF CLEATS FOR SERVICE RAMPS								
Ramp slope								
not more than	Goods carried	No goods carried						
1:6	360	460						
1:5	330	430						
1:4	300	400						
1:3	280	380						

# ND2 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS





# ND2.6 Treads and risers

# ND2.6.1 Straight flights

- (a) A stairway must be suitable to provide safe passage in relation to the nature, volume and frequency of likely usage.
- (b) A stairway in any building (including a soleoccupancy unit in a Class 2 building) satisfies (a) if it has -
  - subject to (v), not more than 18 nor less than
     2 risers in each flight;
  - going and riser dimensions in accordance with Figure ND2.6.1 and Table ND2.6.1 that are constant throughout each flight;
  - (iii) risers which do not have any openings that would allow a 100 mm sphere to pass through between the treads;
  - (iv) treads which have a non-slip finish or a suitable non-skid strip near the edge of the nosings;
  - (v) in a *health-care building* where the difference in level is not more than 600 mm a ramp must be provided instead of steps;
  - (vi) a cross fall of between 1:100 and 1:50 where the stairway is subject to wetting; and
  - (vii) treads not exceed the goings by more than 30 mm.

# ND2.6.2 Curved stairs

Curved stairs must comply with the relevant requirements of ND2.6.1 as well as the following:

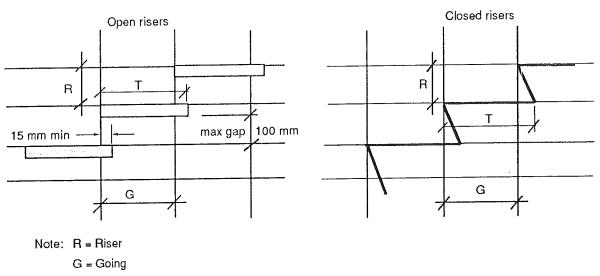
- (a) For the pursoses of satisfying Table ND2.6.1 the going must be measured:
  - along half way across the width of the stair where the clear width is less than 900 mm; and
  - (ii) 300 mm from each side of the stair where the clear width is 900 mm or more.
- (b) All steps must have the same uniform taper.
- (c) The going at the narrow end of the steps must be not less than 75 mm.
- (d) Winders are not permitted.

# ND2.7 Landings

In a stairway -

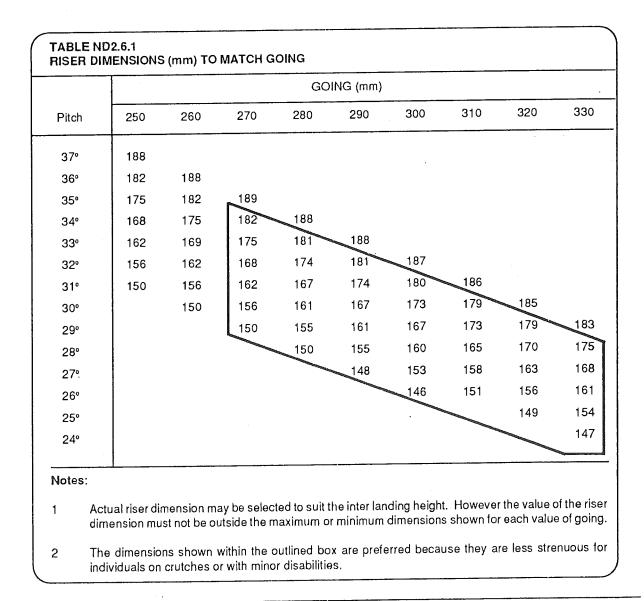
- a) landings having a maximum slope of 1:50 may be used in any building to limit the number of risers in each flight and each landing must -
  - (i) be not less than 750 mm long measurd 500 mm from the inside edge of the landing; and
  - (ii) have a non-slip finish throughout or a suitable non-skid strip near the edge of the landing where it leads to a flight of stairs below; and

#### CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS



T = Tread





- (b) in a health-care building -
  - the area of any landing must be sufficient to move a stretcher, 2 m long and 600 mm wide, at an incline not more than the slope of the stairs, with at least one end of the stretcher on the landing while changing direction between flights; or
  - the stair must have a change of direction of 180°, and the landing a clear width of not less than 1.6 m and a clear length of not less than 2.7 m.

#### ND2.8 Thresholds

The threshold of a doorway must not incorporate a step or ramp at any point closer to the doorway than the width of the door leaf unless-

- in patient-care areas in a *health-care building*, the door sill is not more than 25 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony or the like to which the doorway opens;
- (b) in other cases -
  - (i) the doorway opens to a road, *open space* or external balcony; and
  - the door sill is not more than 190 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony, or the like, to which the doorway opens.

#### ND2.9 Balustrades

- (a) In a Class 2 or 3 building a continuous balustrade must be provided along the side of any stairway or ramp, or any corridor, hallway, balcony, bridge or the like, if -
  - (i) it is not bounded by a wall; and
  - (ii) the change in level is more than 1 m,
- (b) A balustrade *required* by (a) must prevent, as far as practicable-
  - (i) children climbing over or through it;
  - (ii) persons accidentally falling from the floor; and
  - (ii) objects which might strike a person at a lower level accidentally falling from the floor surface.
- (c) At balconies a balustrade satisfies (b) if -
  - (i) it has a height of not less than 930 mm above the balcony floor;
  - (ii) the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade is not more than

100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm;

- (iii) all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold; and
- (d) In stairways and ramps (including access bridges and landings) a balustrade satisfies (b) if -
  - (i) it has a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of the stair treads and the floor of the landing, balcony, corridor, hallway, access bridge or the like;
  - the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade (including any openable window or panel) is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm; and
  - (iii) all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold.

#### ND2.10 Handrails

- (a) Suitable handrails must be provided where necessary to assist and provide stability to persons using a ramp or stairway.
- (b) Handrails satisfy (a) if they are -
  - (i) located along at least one side of the ramp or flight of stairs;
  - (ii) not more than 2 m apart in the case of intermediate handrails;
  - (iii) fixed at a height of not less than 700 mm above the nosings of stair treads in a building that is used as a primary *school*;
  - (iv) in any other case fixed at a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of stair treads and the floor surface of the ramp, landing, or the like; and
  - (v) continuous between stair flight landings and have no obstruction on or above them that will tend to break a hand-hold.

#### ND2.11 Fixed platforms, walkways and ladders

Fixed platforms, walkways, non-*required* stairways, handrails, balustrades and ladders must comply with AS 1657 in a workshop factory or warehouse.

#### CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

#### ND2.12 Doorways and doors

A doorway serving as a *required exit*, forming part of a *required exit*, or in a patient-care area of *a health-care building* -

- (a) must not be fitted with a revolving door;
- (b) must not be fitted with a roller shutter or tilt-up door unless -
  - (i) it serves a shop, factory or warehouse building or part with a *floor area* not more than 200 m<sup>2</sup>;
  - (ii) the doorway is the only *required exit* from the building or part; and
  - (iii) it is held in the open position while the building or part is lawfully occupied;

#### ND2.13 Swinging doors

1

A swinging door in a *required exit* or forming part of a *required* exit -

- (a) must not encroach-
  - (i) at any part of its swing by more than 500 mm on the *required* width of a *required* stairway, passageway or ramp, including the landings; and
  - (ii) when fully open, by more than 100 mm on the *required* width of the *required* exit, and

the measurement of encroachment in each case is to include door handles or other furniture or attachments to the door;

- (b) must swing in the direction of egress unless -
  - (i) it serves a building or part with a *floor area* not more than 200m<sup>2</sup>, it is the only *required exit* from the building or part and it is fitted with a device for holding it in the open position; or
  - (ii) it serves a sanitary compartment or airlock (in which case it may swing in either direction); and
- (c) must not otherwise impede the path or direction of egress.

đ

### ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

ND3.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to all Class 2 and 3 buildings.

#### ND3.2 Access to buildings

Access for people with disabilities must be provided to buildings as set out in Table ND3.2 by means of a continuous path of travel in accordance with AS 1428.1, or NZS 4121 and NZS 4122 -

(a) from the boundary of the allotment;

- (b) from any carpark space on the allotment (whether within or outside the building) -
  - (i) that is set aside for people with disabilitie using the building; or
  - (ii) if there are no carpark spaces set aside fc them, from any carpark area that serves th building; and
- (c) from any other building on the allotment to whic access for people with disabilities is *required*.

ULAS	S OF BUILDING				ACCESS REQUIREMENTS
Class	: 2				To and within -
(a)	If the building conta more than 10 units i more than 49 units	ins - up to 49 	) units	 	  one sole-occupancy unit. 2 sole-occupancy units.
(b)	If accommodation is 10 persons other the				
	up to 49 beds more than 49 units		••		  2 beds. 4 beds.
c)	Common areas of b <i>required</i> to be acces			re 	 the entrance floor and to all public areas on that floor.
Class	3				 To and within the entrance floor if its <i>floor area</i> is more than 500 m <sup>2</sup> . To and within any floor if irrespective of <i>floor area</i> , the floor is not more than 190 mm at the point of entrance above or below the adjacent finished ground level; and within any other floor to which vertical access by way of a ramp, step or kerb ramp is provided.
lealth	-care building	••	••		 To and within all areas normally accessible to the public, patients or staff.

#### ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

#### ND3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible

1

it.

ιţ,

- (a) Access for people with disabilities must be provided-
  - (i) from the doorway at the entrance floor providing access to any *sanitary compartment required* for the use of people with disabilities; and
  - to areas normally used by the occupants, excluding any plantroom, commercial kitchen, cleaners' store room, maintenance accessway, rigging loft, or the like.
- (b) A path of travel providing *required* access must not include a stairway, turnstile, revolving door, escalator or other impediment which would prevent a person in a wheelchair using it.

(c) Access, finishes and fittings, including passageways, ramps, step or kerb ramps, passenger lifts, signs, doorways and other parts of the building required by this Part must comply at least with the provisions of AS 1428.1, or NZS 4121 and NZS 4122.

#### ND3.4 Concessions

It is not necessary to provide access for people with disabilities -

- to more than 30% of the public space in a restaurant, cafe, bar, function room, or the like, in a Class 3 building; and
- (b) to any area if access would be inappropriate because of the particular purpose for which the area is used.

•

.

i F

.

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

# PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO 9)

# SECTION NE

# SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

# Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NE1 Fire Fighting Equipment
- NE2 Smoke Control
- NE3 Electricity

. i I

#### SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

1

1

13 13

18

ः द

ત્

11

.

со	NTENTS
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	
Part	Part
NE1 Fire Fighting Equipment	NE2 Smoke Control
NE1.1 Application of Part	NE2.1 Natural smoke venting
NE1.2 Portable fire extinguishers	NE2.2 Smoke venting in theatres and stages
NE1.3 Provision for special hazards	NE3 Electrical Work
	NE3.1 Safety
	NE3.2 Amenity

# National Building Code - 1990

#### Page NE-1

#### NE SERVICES AND EQUPMENT

的现在分词是一个是一个人的

.

10月前前前,10天代10月代的6月二日

.

Anterio de la compañía de la compañía

Chill Hills MRAIL

 $e^{-i\omega_{1}}$  ,  $M^{2}$  is a gluon contract of i

.

#### SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### OBJECTIVES

a,

ŧ!

ŝ,

٠t

11

Į

K.

1

A building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

#### Part NEP1 Fire Fighting Equipment

Having regard to the size and use of the building, adequate in-built and external fire protection services must be provided to-

- (a) restrict fire growth to the compartment of origin;
- (b) prevent fire spread to adjoining building or allotments; and
- (c) facilitate the fighting of fire to minimise damage to the building and its contents.

#### Part NEP2 Smoke Control

- Ventilation and air-conditioning systems installed in a building must-
- (a) provide suitable air for the health and safety of the occupants; and
- (b) incorporate reasonable measures to minimise the spread of smoke in the event of fire to escape paths from the building, to other compartments and to enable access for fighting the fire.

#### **REQUIRED PERFORMANCE**

#### NEP1.1 Active fire fighting

In determining the type and extent of active fire fighting systems that must be provided for a building the following must be taken into account -

- (a) the class of occupancy;
- (b) proximity to fire-source features ;
- (c) size of fire compartments
- (d) effective height;
- (e) the technical resources available locally to satisfactorily instal and regularly test and maintain the active fire fighting system.

#### Fire and smoke alarms

Reliable detection and warning systems must be installed for *automatic* operation in the event of a fire or generation of unacceptable levels of smoke.

#### NEP2.1 Smoke control

Buildings must have a sufficient number of *windows* or other openings or ventilating arrangements to quickly disperse any smoke generated in a fire. In the case of buildings used as theatres, public halls or the like, the audience seating area and egress routes must be protected against fire and smoke spreading from any fire occurring on the stage, in back stage areas or in a rigging loft.

•

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

#### **FIRE-FIGHTING EQUIPMENT**

NE1.1 Application of Part

633

R

:0

ij.

4

d.

ą,

J

This Part applies to Class 2 and 3 buildings.

#### NE1.2 Portable fire extinguishers

Portable fire extinguishers containing an extinguishing agent suitable for the risk beong protected must be installed in accordance with NZS 4503.

#### NE1.3 Provision for special hazards

Suitable additional provision must be made if special problems of fighting fire could arise because of-

- (a) the nature or quantity of materials stored, displayed or used in a building or on the allotment; or
- (b) the location of the building in relation to a water supply for fire fighting purposes.

TYPE OF EXTINGUISHER		WATER	FOAM	DRY CHEMICAL	CARBON DIOXIDE	
Class and Type of Fire				F EXTINGUISHER Electrically Non-Conductive		
Α	Ordinary combustibles (wood, paper, etc)	YES MOST SUITABLE	VES	√YES	VES	
В	Flammable liquids	X NO	YES SPECIAL FOAM REQUIRED FOR ALCHOL-TYPE FIRE	VES	VES	
С	Flammable gases	X NO	X NO	VES	VYES	
D			X NO SE SPECIAL PURPO	X NO	X NO SONLY>	
	(E.) Fire involving live electrical equipment	Х ио	Хио	VES	VES	

. . . .

#### TABLE NE1.2 PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHER SELECTION CHART

## **SMOKE CONTROL**

#### NE2.1 Natural smoke venting

ę

1 3

Ľ

Ĵ

3i

む あった む

法法食查奉申钱的题言

۰,

Ę

( 1.

3

J.

Windows, doors, panels, or the like, provided to control the movement of smoke must be as evenly distributed as practicable and be readily openable.

#### NE2.2 Smoke venting in theatres and stages

The design of smoke control systems for theatres, stages and public halls must fulfil up-to-date and relevant fire engineering principles and practices.

#### **ELECTRICAL WORK**

#### NE3.1 Safety

#### NE3.1.1 General Requirements

All electrical wiring and installations in or on any Class 2 and 3 building must ensure safety from electric shock and fire. This requirement is satisfied if all electrical work associated with the building is done to comply with AS 3000 - Electrical installations - buildings, structures and premises (known as the SAA Wiring Rules). The capacity of the system must allow for the long term anticipated requirements of the occupants.

#### NE3.1.2 Plug and power sockets

Plug and power sockets must:

- (a) have their individual switch;
- (b) be located so that
  - (i) cords and cables need not be taken across doorways;
  - trailing cords and cables do not have to cross circulation routes;

- (c) not be located behind door-swings; and
- (d) in the kitchen in Class 2 buildings be located 250 mm above worktops at the back of benches or on a return wall where it exists.

#### NE3.1.3 Meter and distribution board

The meter must be located in a position from which it can easily be read. If the main switches and circuit breakers/ fuses are not located with the meter they must be located at a height of not less than 1.8 m from the floor where they can be found easily in the dark.

#### NE3.2 Amenity

NE3.2.1 Light switch layout

- (a) The layout of light switches in Class 2 buildings must follow the main night time circulation routes such as from the entrance hall to the living area to the bed-rooms to the bathroom and toilet. Crossing any major space in the dark must be avoided. The switches must be located close to door openings.
- (b) All stairs must have two-way switching at the top and the bottom.

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

# PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO 9)

# SECTION NF

# HEALTH AND AMENITY

# Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NF1 Damp and Weatherproofing
- NF2 Sanitary Facilities
- NF3 Room Sizes
- NF4 Light and Ventilation
- NF5 Watersupply Plumbing
- NF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- NF7 Roof Drainage

. , .

#### HEALTH AND AMENITY

#### CONTENTS

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

#### Part

ĝ!

ŝ

ŝ,

10 N N

l

and the set

10 A A A

ų

1

£

<u>й</u>

Ċ

Ą

Į

f,

 $\mathcal{M}_{\mathcal{M}}$ 

¢.

۲ ج

S.

NF1	Damp and Weatherproofing
NF1.1	Drainage
NF1.2	Building on land subject to dampness
NF1.3	Drainage of land external to building
NF1.4	Weatherproofing of roofs and walls
NF1.5	Pliable roof sarking
NF1.6	Water proofing of wet areas in buildings
NF1.7	Damp-proof courses
NF1.8	Acceptable damp-proof courses
NF1.9	Damp-proofing of floors on the ground
NF2	Sanitary Facilities
NF2.1	Facilities for Class 2 buildings
NF2.2	Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures
NF2.3	Facilities in Class 3 buildings
NF2.4	Construction of sanitary compartments
NF2.5	Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins
NF3	Room Sizes
NF3.1	Height of rooms
NF3.2	Reduced height permissible
NF3.3	Ceiling fans
A 1 67 4	4 Luk A and Mandladian

# NF4 Light and Ventilation

NF4.1 Provision of natural light

NF4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

#### Part

NF4.3	Natural light borrowed from adjoining room
NF4.4	Artificial lighting
NF4.5	Ventilation of rooms
NF4.6	Natural ventilation
NF4.7	Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room
NF4.8	Restriction on position of WCs and urinals
NF4.9	Airlocks
NF4.10	Sub-floor ventilation
NF5	Watersupply Plumbing

- NF5.1 General requirements
- NF5.2 Means of compliance
- NF5.3 Pipes which are not easy to access

NF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters

NF5.5 Rainwater storage

#### NF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage

- NF6.1 General requirements
- NF6.2 Means of complianceNF6.3 Certain floors to be drained
- NF6.4 Grease trap
- NF6.5 Toxic wastes
- NF6.6 Small treatment plants

NF7 Roof Drainage

# SECTION NF HEALTH AND AMENITY

#### **PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

#### OBJECTIVES

A building must be designed and constructed to meet the following objectives -

#### NFP1 Damp and Weatherproofing

Suitable drainage, damp and weatherproofing must be provided where necessary to prevent-

- (a) moisture or damp affecting the stability of the building;
- (b) the creation of any unhealthy or dangerous condition; or
- (c) causing damage to adjoining property.

#### NFP2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities

Adequate toilet and washing facilities must be provided for the occupants of a building, having regard to its use and size. In residential buildings other than those meant for transient occupants suitable facilities must also be available for the preparation and cooking of food, the cleaning of utensils and the laundering of clothes.

#### NFP3 Room Sizes

The *floor area*, plan dimensions and ceiling heights of rooms and other spaces within a building must be adequate for their use or purpose.

#### NFP4 Light and Ventilation

The standard of light and ventilation within a building must be adequate for the occupants, having regard to the use or purpose of the building.

#### NFP5 Water Supply Plumbing

An appropriate safe and hygienic system of plumbing for the supply of water for domestic needs must be provided.

#### NFP6 Sanitary Plumbing

An appropriate system of drainage for the hygienic waterborne conveyance of *waste water* must be provided.

#### NFP7 Roof Drainage

Where a roof drainage system is provided, it must give reasonable protection against the overflow of rainwater into the building.

#### REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

#### NFP1.1 Damp and weatherproofing

Water and damp conditions must not be allowed to -

- (a) affect the stability of buildings;
- (b) create ill health or discomfort for the occupants;
- (c) damage or deface buildings as a result of moisture present at the completion of construction;
- (d) cause damage to adjacent property; or
- (e) pond surface water against buildings or beneath the floor.

#### NFP2.1 Cooking and sanitary facilities

Any cooking facility provided must not spread smoke which may affect health or create a nuisance to the occupants or neighbours. Washing and clothes laundering facilities provided in residential buildings must be consistent with the size and occupancy of the building. The standard of toilet and washing facilities provided must in any building not create a nuisance or lead to ill health to the occupants or neighbours. These facilities must be located conveniently and the number of units provided must be consistent with the size and class of occupancy. Smoke extraction units from kitchens and other process operations in class 3 buildings must ensure that the progresive build- up of soot grease and the like does not lead to a fire or unhealthy conditions.

#### NFP3.1 Room sizes

The size and disposition of rooms in a building must be consistent with the requirements of health and hygiene.

#### NFP4.1 Light and ventilation

Where airhandling systems are provided in a building there must be adequate provision for natural ventilation to cater for any prolonged failure of the system.

#### NFP5.1 Water supply plumbing

Plumbing for potable watersupply must use materials which do not react with the water and thereby make it unsuitable. Suitable precautions must be taken to ensure that unsafe or unhygienic materials have no chance of entering the supply system. The installation of hot water systems must not impair the safety of the users. All concealed and difficult-to-access plumbing work must be suitably protected so that there is no likelihood of damage and leakage. The

#### NF HEALTH AND AMENITY

plumbing must take into account the current and anticipated needs of the user and allow for the simultaneous use of the connected system by others.

#### NFP6.1 Sanitary plumbing and drainage

Sanitary plumbing must be laid to self-cleansing grades consistent with their discharge loading, unless other suitable arrangements are made to ensure that the system is kept free of the accretion of sewage and other waste matter. The size of drains and the layout of their connections must reasonably ensure the current and anticipated needs of the users. The connections to sanitary installations must ensure that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions nor create any nuisance to anyone and are suitably vented.

#### NFP7.1 Roof drainage

. -

άč.

Any roof drainage system provided must be capable of handling the reasonably expected peak intensities of rainfall.

#### **DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

#### DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

#### NF1.1 Site drainage

The construction of a site drainage system and the position and manner of discharge of a stormwater drain must not-

- (a) result in the entry of water into any building;
- (b) affect the stability of any building; or
- (c) create any unhealthy or dangerous condition within or around any building.

#### NF1.2 Building on land subject to dampness or flooding

One or all of the following measures must be carried out if it is warranted by the dampness of the building *site* or proneness to flooding:

- (a) The subsoil must be adequately drained.
- (b) The ground under the building must be regraded or filled and provided with outlets to prevent accumulation of water.
- (c) The surface of the ground under the building must be covered with a suitable damp-resisting material.
- (d) The top of the floor must be kept at not less than 300 mm above the known flood level at the *site*.

#### NF1.3 Drainage of land external to building

A suitable system of drainage must be provided if paving, excavation or any other work on an allotment will cause undue interference with the existing drainage of rainwater falling on the allotment whether the existing drainage is natural or otherwise.

#### NF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls

Roofs and *external walls* must be constructed to prevent rain or dampness penetrating to the inner parts of a building, unless it is a workshop or open shed and in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance.

#### NF1.5 Pliable roof sarking

Pliable roof *sarking-type material* used under roof or wall coverings must comply and be fixed in accordance with-

- (a) AS 1736; or
- (b) AS 1903 and AS 1904

#### NF1.6 Water proofing of wet areas in buildings

The following parts of a building must be impervious to water:

- In any building the floor surface or substrate in a shower enclosure, or within 1.5 m measured horizontally from a point vertically below the shower fitting, if there is no enclosure;
- (b) In a Class 2 or 3 building the floor surface or substrate in a bathroom or shower room, slop sink compartment, laundry or *sanitary compartment* which is used in common by the occupants.
- (c) The wall surface or substrate-
  - (i) of a shower enclosure, or if the shower is not enclosed, within 1.5 m and exposed to a shower fitting, to a height of 1.8 m above the floor;
  - (ii) immediately adjacent or behind a bath, trough, basin, sink, or similar fixture, to a height of 300 mm above the fixture if it is within 75 mm of the wall.
- (d) The junction between the floor and wall if the wall and floor are *required* to be impervious to water.
- (e) The junction between the wall and fixture if the wall is *required* to be impervious to water.

#### NF1.7 Damp-proof courses

Except in a building that is exempt from weatherproofing under NF1.4, moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching-

- (a) the lowest floor timbers and the walls above the lowest floor joists;
- (b) the walls above the damp-proof course; and
- (c) the underside of a suspended floor constructed of a material other than timber, and the supporting beams or girders.

#### NF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses

A damp-proof course must consist of-

- (a) a material that complies with AS 2904;
- (b) suitable termite shields placed on piers; or

#### NF1 DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

(c) other suitable material.

#### NF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on filling-

- (a) moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching the upper surface of the floor and adjacent walls by-
- (i) the insertion of a vapour barrier in accordance with AS 2870.1; or
- (ii) other suitable means; and
- (b) damp-proofing need not be provided if the building is exempt from weatherproofing under NF1.4.

# SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITES

#### NF2.1 Facilities for Class 2 buildings

Sanitary and other facilities for Class 2 buildings, must be provided in accordance with Table NF2.1.

#### TABLE NF2.1 PROVISION OF SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

CLASS OF MINIMUM FACILITIES REQUIRED BUILDING

Class 2 Facilities for residents-

ι

۱

For each 10 residents for whom private facilities are not provided-

- (a) a shower; and
- (b) a closet pan and washbasin

If situated outside the building, these facilities must be conveniently accessible.

#### NF2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures

- (a) The number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to Table ND1.10 if it cannot be more accurately determined by other means.
- (b) Unless the premises are predominantly used by one sex or numbers of male and female users are known, sanitary facilites must be provided equally for both sexes.
  - In addition where the nature of employment of an employee is such that a shower is highly desirable at the end of the work (eg. cooks and kitchen hands), showers must be provided for each 10 such male or female employee in any one shift.

#### NF2.3 Facilities in Class 3 Buildings

Sanitary facilities must be provided in Class 3 buildings in accordance with Table NF2.3.

Class of Building	User	Max Number Served by-									
		Closet Fixture (s)			Urinals (s)			Washbasin (s)			
		1	2	Each Extra	1	2	Each Extra	1	2	Each Extra	
All Class 3	Employees										
	Males Females	20 15 .	40 30	20 15	25 -	50 -	50 -	60 60	120 120	60 60	
Restaurants cafes, bars, public halls,	Patrons-										
function rooms and for out patients in <i>health-care</i> buildings	Males Females	50 30	200 70	250 80	50 -	200 -	100 -	50 50	200 200	250 250	
Health-care ` buildings	Patients-										
other than for out patients)	Males Females	-	16 16	8 8	-	-	-	16 16	32 32	16 16	

#### NF2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Class of	User	1	Max Number Ser									
Building	0001	Max Number Ser										
			Closet Fixture (s)			Urinals (s)			Washbasin (s)			
		1	2	Each Extra	1	2	Each Extra	1	2	Each Extra		
Schools	Students a	and stat	ff									
	Males Females	30 20	70 40	70 30	30 -	70 -	35 -	60 60	140 140	140 1 40		
Sporting	Participan	ts at sp	orting v	enues, t	heatres	or the li	ke			<u> </u>		
venues, theatres												
cinemas,or the like and churches, chapels or the	Males Females	20 15	40 30	20 15	10 -	20 -	10 -	20 20	40 40	20 20		
like	- Other faci	lities: O	ne showe	er for eac	h 10 or	part, par	, ticipants					
	Spectators or patrons											
v	Males Females	250 75	500 250	500 250	100	200	100	250 250	500 500	500 500		

#### NF2.4 Construction of sanitary compartments

Partitions - Other than in any early childhood centre, sanitary compartments must have doors and partitions must separate adjacent compartments and extend-

- (a) from floor level to the ceiling in the case of a unisex facility; or
- (b) to a height of not less than 1500 mm above the floor if primary *school* children are the principal users, or 1800 mm above the floor in all other cases.

#### NF2.5 Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins

- (a) A urinal may be either-
  - (i) an individual stall or wall hung urinal;

- (ii) each 600 mm length of a continuous urina trough; or
- (iii) a closet pan used in place of a urinal.
- (b) A washbasin may be either-
  - (i) an individual basin; or
  - (ii) a part of a hand wash trough served by a single water tap.

#### NF2.6 Facilities for people with disabilities

Sanitary facilities must be provided in accordance with Table NF2.6 in every Class 2 and 3 building that is *required* by Part ND3 to be accessible to people with disabilities.

CLASS OF BUILDING					MINIMUM FACILITY FOR USE BY PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES					
Class 2 required		sole-o	ccupanc	y unit to v	which access for people with disabilities is					
(a)	one clo	set pan	and was	shbasin; a	nd					
(b)	one sh	ower.								
Class 3	ouildings	with <i>flo</i>	or area	more than	1000 m <sup>2</sup> and					
building a	are <i>requii</i>	red to b		sible-	<i>ole-occupancy units</i> , or other parts of the MUM NUMBER FOR USE BY PEOPLE					
NUMBER OF PERSONS FOR WHOM TOTAL FACILITIES NORMALLY REQUIRED					WITH DISABILITIES					
Closet p	ans -									
1 - 100				(a)	one unisex facility; or					
				(b)	one closet pan and washbasin for each sex.					
More than	100 ה			(a)	2 unisex facilities; or					
				(b)	one closet pan and washbasin for each sex and one unisex facility.					
n all cas sanitary to	es, facilit owels.	ies for t	females	must inclu	ude adequate means for the disposal of					
samaly a										

NF2

### **ROOM SIZES AND HEIGHTS**

#### NF3.1 Height of rooms

Minimum heights below the ceiling and any framing excluding minor projections such as cornices, are:

- (a) Class 2 buildings -
  - (i) habitable room 2.4m;
  - (ii) laundry or the like 2.1m.
  - (iii) corridor or passageway 2.1m.

(b) Subject to (c) and (d) Class 3 buildings-

- office, shop, warehouse or factory space -2.4 m;
- (ii) corridor, passageway, or the like 2.1 m.
- (c) Health-care building -
  - (i) *ward area* 2.4 m;
  - (ii) operating theatre or delivery room 3.0 m;
  - (iii) treatment room, clinic, waiting room,

passageway, corridor, or the like - 2.4 m.

- (d) Ancillary and other spaces -
  - bathroom, shower room, water closet, toilet room, airlock, tea preparation room, pantry, store room, garage, carparking area, or the like, in any building - 2.1 m;

#### NF3.2 Reduced height permissible

These heights may be reduced if the reduction does not unduly interfere with the proper functioning of the room in-

- (a) attic rooms
- (b) rooms with a sloping ceiling or projection below ceiling line; or
- (c) other rooms or spaces.

#### NF3.3 Ceiling fans

Ceiling fans and other such appliances must be at a minimum clerance of 2.1 m.

### LIGHT AND VENTILATION

#### NF4.1 Provision of natural light

Natural lighting must be provided in:

- (a) Class 2 buildings to all bedrooms and dormitories.
- (b) *Health-care buildings* to all rooms used for sleeping purposes.
- (c) School buildings-to all general purpose classrooms in primary or secondary *schools* and all playrooms or the like for the use of children in an *early childhood centre*.

#### NF4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

Direct natural lighting must be provided by windows that-

- (a) have an aggregate light transmitting area measured excluding framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room;
- (b) face-

)

- (i) a court or other space open to the sky; or
- (ii) an open verandah, open carport, or the like;
- (c) are not less than a horizontal distance from any adjoining allotment, or a wall of the same building or another building on the allotment that they face, that is the greater of-
  - (i) in a Class 2 or *health-care buildings* 1 m; and
  - (ii) in a ward area or other room used for sleeping purposes in a health-care building - 3m.

#### NF4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room

Natural lighting to a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 2 building may come through a glazed panel or opening from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if-

- (a) in the building both rooms are within the same soleoccupancy unit or the enclosed verandah is on common property;
- (b) the glazed panel or opening has an area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to which it provides light; and
- (c) the adjoining room has *windows* with an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms.

The areas specified in (b) and (c) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural light is provided from another source.

#### NF4.4 Artificial lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided-

- (a) in *required* stairways and ramps by means of separate electrical wiring circuits from the main switchboard for the exclusive use of the stairway or ramp; and
- (b) if natural lighting of a standard equivalent to that required by NF4.2 is not available and the periods of occupation, or use of the room or space will create undue hazard to occupants seeking egress in an emergency, in -
- Class 2 and 3 buildings to all rooms that are frequently occupied and all corridors, lobbies, internal stairways, other circulation spaces and paths of egress.

#### NF4.5 Ventilation of rooms

- (a) A habitable room, office, shop, factory, workroom, sanitary compartment, bathroom, shower room, laundry and any other room occupied by a person for any purpose must have adequate flow-through or cross-ventilation and air quality, including sufficient air-changes and fresh air quantities.
- (b) Provision of either-
  - (i) natural ventilation complying with NF4.6; or
  - a mechanical ventilation or air conditioning system with provision for reasonable natural ventilation in case of a lengthy failure of the mechanical system,

satisfies (a).

Where it is not practical to provide any natural ventilation for a *sanitary comparment*, bathroom, shower or laundry (other than commercial), it is permissible to have only a mechanical ventilation system with the same effect as otherwise *required* for natural ventilation.

#### NF4.6 Natural ventilation

*Required* natural ventilation must be provided by permanent *windows*, openings, doors or other devices which can be opened-

(a) with an aggregate opening or openable size not less than 15% of the *floor area* of the room *required* to be ventilated; and

#### NF4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

- (b) open to-
  - (i) a court, or space open to the sky; or
  - (ii) an open verandah, open carport, or the like.

#### NF4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room

Natural ventilation to a room may come through a *window*, opening, ventilating door or other device from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if both rooms are within the same *sole-occupancy unit* or the enclosed verandah is common property, and-

- (a) in a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building -
  - the room to be ventilated is not a sanitary compartment;
  - the window, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 15% of the *floor area* of the room to be ventilated; and
  - (iii) the adjoining room has a window, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 15% of the combined *floor* areas of both rooms;
- (b) in a Class 3 building-
  - the window, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 15% of the *floor area* of the room to be ventilated, measured not more than 3.6 m above the floor; and
  - the adjoining room has a *window*, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 15% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms; and
- (c) the ventilating areas specified in (a) and (b) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural ventilation is provided from another source.

#### NF4.8 Restriction on position of WCs and urinals

A room containing a closet pan or urinal must not open directly into-

- (a) a kitchen or pantry;
- (b) a public dining room or restaurant;
- (c) a dormitory in a Class 2 building;
- (d) a room used for public assembly; or

(e) a workplace normally occupied by more than one person.

#### NF4.9 Airlocks

If a room containing a closet pan or urinal is prohibited under NF4.8 from opening directly to another room-

- (a) in a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building
  - access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room; or
  - the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with an exhaust fan; and
- (b) in a Class 3 building (which is not an *early childhood* centre, or primary school) -
  - access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room with a *floor area* of not less than 1.1 m<sup>2</sup> and fitted with *self-closing* doors at all access doorways; or
  - (ii) the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation and the doorway to the room adequately screened from view.

#### NF4.10 Sub-floor ventilation

- (a) Suitable provision must be made to prevent undue deterioration of the lowest floor of a building because of dampness, other conditions on the allotment or the design of the building.
- (b) The following would satisfy the requirements of (a)-
  - (i) where timber is used, the floor framing must be suspended with a minimum 400 mm clearance from the ground underneath to the floor and all around. Subfloor ventilation must be provided with ventilation openings totalling not less than 3% of the peripheral vertical area between the ground and the boundary of the floor. These openings are to be spaced as uniformly as practicable.
  - (ii) where other than timber is used:
    - subfloor ventilation should be provided if the floor is suspended;
    - an impervious cover provided over the ground surface beneath the building; or
      - the floor members suitably treated.

#### WATERSUPPLY PLUMBING

#### NF5.1 General requirements

1

The plumbing work for water supply must ensure -

- the appropriateness of the materials and products used;
- (b) the correct sizing of water services for the intended use;
- the control of cross-connections and prevention of backflow;
- (d) adequate care in the installtion of the services;
- (e) suitable provision of main and subsidiary storage as required ;
- (f) adequate connections to sanitary services without endangering health and hygiene; and
- (g) the installation of hot water systems to provide safe and adequate service.

#### NF5.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of NF5.1 are satisfied if all plumbing for watersupply is carried out to the relevant provisions of -

- (a) AS 3500 Part 1 for cold water service; and
- (b) AS 3500 Part 4 for hot water service.

#### NF5.3 Pipes which are not easy to access

Particular attention is drawn to the provisions in AS 3500 -Parts 1 and 4 which prohibit the installation of pipes and fittings of certain materials in locations which are concealed or difficult to access. These include pipes made of ABS, galvanised steel, polybutylene and UPVC. Pipes and fittings made of copper, copper alloy, stainless steel, ductile iron, cast iron and polyethylene when used in concealed or difficult to access locations must follow the special precautions specified in AS 3500 - Parts 1 and 4.

#### NF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters

- (a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
  - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or earthquake loads;
  - (ii) be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
  - (iii) provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- (b) AS 3500 Part 4 is the relevant standard for the installation of a household water heater.

#### NF5.5 Rainwater storage

When rainwater is collected and stored, the storage and distribution must reasonably ensure that the water is not contaminated by unsafe or unsuitable materials. The capacity of the catchment and storage must be adequate to provide a continued supply of water during years of low rainfall. Specification DF5.5 may be used to provide storage.

# SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE

#### NF6.1 General requirements

Sanitary plumbing and drainage must ensure -

- the appropriateness of the products and materials used;
- (b) the correct sizing of drainage services for the intended use;
- (c) adequate care in the installation of the services including the provision of appropriate grades; and
- (d) that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions or any nuisance to anyone.

#### NF6.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of NF6.1 are satisfied if all sanitary plumbing and drainage works are carried out to the relevant provisions of AS 3500 - Part 2 - Sanitary plumbing and sanitary drainage.

Where appropriate, these requirements may also be met by complying with the provisions of Part DF6.

#### NF6.3 Certain floors to be drained

In a Class 2 building the floor of each bathroom and laundry in a *sole-occupancy unit* which is located at other than the lowest level must be graded to permit drainage to a floor waste gully.

#### NF6.4 Grease trap

Where the nature of the occupancy is such that the waster water contains grease, fats or oils to levels unacceptable to the Authority having jurisdiction, a suitable grease traj must be installed. The accumulated grease and oils must be removed at intervals sufficient to prevent their escape into the disposal system. After removal the grease and oils must be suitably disposed off.

#### NF6.5 Trade wastes

Any trade waste unacceptable to the Authority having jurisdiction must be pretreated before it enters the disposa system.

#### NF6.6 Small treatment plants

Where there is no public sewerage and treatment system available one of the following methods may be used for the treatement of sewage:

- (a) Packaged treatment plants.
- (b) Septic tanks.
- (c) Any other suitable method.

The details given in Annexure 2 to Specification DF2.1 may be used for the preliminary design of the main elements of a septic tank system if such a system is considered.

# **ROOF DRAINAGE**

#### NF7.1 Roof drainage

Roof drainage must comply with the requirements of Part DF7.

.

NATIONAL BUILDING CODE 1990

PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO 9)

# SECTION NG

# **ANCILLARY PROVISIONS**

# Performance Requirements Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- NG1 Minor Structures and Components
- NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues



ANCI	I ARY	PROVI	SIONS
ANULL		1 1 1 2 4 1	

đ

5 8

ŝ

'}

-(† -(†

> /( K

15

100

8. 16.

书代

ά¥

N 9.

6

#### CONTENTS

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Part Part NG1.5 Moveable awnings or sunshades over public Minor Structures and NG1 Components places NG1.1 Refrigerated chambers, strong rooms NG1.6 Fences and vaults NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues NG1.2 Access to domestic-type water heaters NG2.1 General requirements NG1.3 Parapets on flat roofs NG2.2 Open fireplaces deemed-to-satisfy NG1.4 Projections over public places NG2.3 Incinerator rooms

.

#### PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### **OBJECTIVES AND REQUIRED PERFORMANCE**

This Section contains more specific requirements for particular parts of buildings or structures.

Parts of buildings and structures must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives, in addition to those listed for Sections A, B, NC, ND, NE and NF where relevant, are fulfilled:

#### NGP1 Minor Structures and Components

1

ſ

4

# NGP1.1 Refrigerated chambers, strong rooms and vaults

Refrigerated, cooling chambers, strong rooms and vaults, or the like, which are capable of entry by a person must have adequate safety measures to facilitate escape and for alerting persons outside the chamber or vault in the event of an emergency.

#### NGP1.2 Domestic-type water heaters

Household water heaters must be adequately supported and drained, and accessible.

#### NGP1.3 Safety at elevated places

Elevated places with regular access such as some flat roofs must have adequate protection to prevent anyone from falling.

#### NGP1.4 Use of airspace over public places

Any use of the airspace over public spaces such as footpaths and roads must be limited to ensure that normal public use of such places is not obstructed.

#### NGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues must be adequately constructed or separated to prevent-

- (a) ignition of nearby parts of the building; or
- (b) escape or discharge of smoke to the inside of the building or to adjacent windows, ventilation inlets, or the like.

NG ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

•

.

.

#### DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

#### MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

# NG1.1 Refrigerated chambers, strong rooms and vaults

Ŋ

ľ

い。 デ\_

Ĺ

Ĩ

Î

- (a) A refrigerated or cooling chamber which is of sufficient size for a person to enter must-
  - (i) have a door which is in an opening with a clear width of not less than 600 mm and a clear height of not less than 1.5 m; and
  - (ii) at all times, be able to be opened from inside without a key.
- (b) A strong room or a vault in a building must have-
  - (i) internal lighting controllable only from within the room; and
  - (ii) a pilot light located outside the room but controllable only by the switch for the internal lighting.
- (c) A refrigerated or cooling chamber, strong room or vault must have a suitable alarm device located outside but controllable only from within the chamber, room or vault.

#### NG1.2 Access to domestic-type water heaters

- (a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
  - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or earthquake loads;
  - (ii) be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
  - (iii) provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- (b) Installation of a household water heater in accordance with AS 1529 satisfies (a).

#### NG1.3 Parapets on flat roofs

Where a flat roof or other elevated place has regular access a parapet or balustrade of not less than 1 m height

above the surface of the roof or elevated place must be provided. The smallest dimension of any opening in the parapet or balustrade must not exceed 100 mm.

#### NG1.4 Projections over public places

Buildings must not project beyond the allotment boundary. Architectural features such as eaves cornices clocks lamps ventilating equipment trade signs hoardings flag poles bay or oriel windows and such like as well as a platform or balcony to provide additional means of egress from an existing building, may however project over public footpaths or roads with the following minimum clearances-

- (a) 3300 mmabove existing or intended finished level of footpaths; and
- (b) the outer extremity of the feature must be setback 500 mm from the existing or intended kerb.

Any drainage from such architectural features (including drainage from airconditioning and other ventilating equipment) must be suitably taken down to a *drain* with downpipes which must also satisfy the *required* clearances.

#### NG1.5 Moveable Awnings or sunshades over public places

Any moveable awnings or sunshades must be firmly fixed so that they doenot create any danger obstruction or inconvenience to pedestrians. They must provide the following minimum clearances if they project over public places:-

- (a) 2300 mm above the finished levels of the footpath; and
- (b) their outer extremity must be set back 500 mm from the kerb.

#### NG1.6 Fences

Any fencing or free-standing wall must be suited to the occupancy of the building within. If any barbed wire or other such is used it must be at a height of not less than 2 m above the finished level of any existing or intended adjacent footpath.

#### FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

#### NG2.1 General requirements

A chimney or flue must be constructed-

- (a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance to which it is connected;
- (b) so that the temperature of the exposed faces will not exceed a level that would cause damage to nearby parts of the building;
- (c) so that hot products of combustion will not-
  - (i) escape through the walls of the chimney or flue; or
  - (ii) discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby *combustible* materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like;
- (d) in such a manner as to prevent rainwater penetrating to any part of the interior of the building;
- (e) such that its termination is not less than:
  - (i) 600 mm above any point of penetration of or contact with the roof; and
    - 900 mm above any opening or openable part in any building, within 3 m horizontal distance of the chimney or flue; and
- (f) so that it is accessible for cleaning. because

#### NG2.2 Open fireplaces deemed-to-satisfy

An open fireplace, or solid-fuel burning appliance in which the fuel-burning compartment is not enclosed, satisfied NG2.1 if it has-

- (a) a hearth constructed of stone, concrete, masonry or similar *non-combustible* material so that-
  - (i) it extends not less than 300 mm beyond the front of the fireplace opening and not less than 150 mm beyond each side of that opening.
  - (ii) it extends beyond the limits of the fireplace or appliance not less than 300 mm if the fireplace or appliance is free-standing from any wall of the room;
  - (iii) its upper surface does not slope away from the grate or appliance; and

- (iv) combustible material situated below the hearth (but not below that part required to extend beyond the fireplace opening or the limits of the fireplace) is not less than 155 mm from the upper surface of the hearth;
- (b) walls forming the sides and back of the fireplace up to not less than 300 mm above the underside of the arch or lintel which-
  - (i) are constructed in 2 separate leaves of solid masonry not less than 180 mm thick, excluding any cavity; and
  - (ii) do not consist of concrete block masonry in the construction of the inner leaf;
- (c) walls of the chimney above the level referred to in
   (b)-
  - (i) constructed of masonry units with a net volume, excluding cored and similar holes, not less than 75% of their gross volume, measured on the overall rectangular shape of the units, and with an actual thickness of not less than 90 mm; and
  - (ii) lined internally to a thickness of not less than 12 mm with rendering consisting of 1 part cement, 3 parts lime, and 10 parts sand by volume, or other suitable material; and
- (d) suitable damp-proof courses or flashings to maintain weatherproofing.

#### NG2.3 Incinerator rooms

- (a) If an incinerator is installed in a building any hopper giving access to a charging chute must be-
  - (i) non-combustible;
  - (ii) gastight when closed;
  - designed to return to the closed position after use;
  - (iv) not attached to a chute that connects directly to a flue unless the hopper is located in the open air; and
  - (v) not located in a required exit
- (b) If an incinerator is in a separate room, that room must be separated from other parts of the building by construction with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.